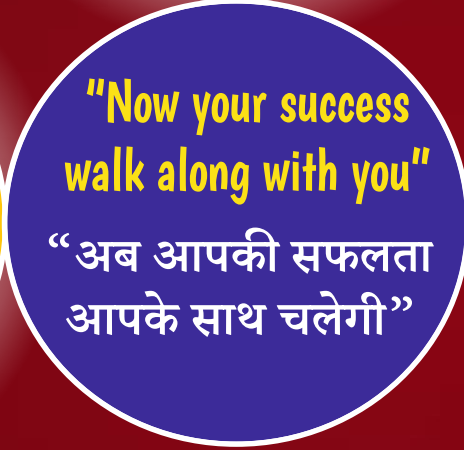


इंगलिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स फ्लूएंट स्पोकन इंगलिश ग्रामर

FLUENT SPOKEN ENGLISH GRAMMAR



Swami Vivekanand
"Arise, awake and stop not
till the goal is reached"



Kaushal Kishor

Master in Education - University of Mumbai

MBA - NMIMS - Mumbai

Bachelor in Education & Psychology - University of Mumbai

"Future Begins With Education"

SpeakNowEnglish.Com

"Never Forget in Life"



Trainer's Message

Dear Trainee,

“Without learning life is meaningless & incomplete.”

Education is the birth right of every individual, Swami Vivekananda has said in his speech in the beginning of the 20th century to maintain India's progress on the highest level education is the only option & solution”

Human can make bridge even on the Sea. Now it's your time where are you going to make your bridge.

We as an International language institute offer you opportunity to enhance communication skills in English and self development to fulfill your desire. It has one of the unique, creative and practical work shop training modules to become fluent native speaker of English.

Speaking English now requires a practical training with use of liberal skills like riding bicycle or swimming, that you will never forget in whole life.

“Wishing you success and command on this international language.”

Your sincerely,

Kaushal Kishor

English Speaking Coach

Master in Education - University of Mumbai

Post Graduate MBA - NMIMS - Mumbai

Bachelor in Education & Psychology- University of Mumbai

Double Graduate in English - University of Mumbai

Author | Corporate Trainer | Life Coach | Career Coach | Train The Trainer

NLP | UGC-NET | UOM-PET | Mathematics & Engineering Mathematics

20+ Years of Experience

प्रशिक्षक का संदेश

प्रिय ट्रेनी

“बिना सीखे जीवन अर्थहीन और अधूरा है।”

“शिक्षा प्रत्येक व्यक्ति का जन्मसिद्ध अधिकार है, स्वामी विवेकानंद ने 20वीं शताब्दी के प्रारंभ में अपने भाषण में कहा है कि भारत की प्रगति को उच्चतम स्तर पर बनाए रखने के लिए शिक्षा ही एकमात्र विकल्प और समाधान है”

इंसान समुद्र पर भी सेतु बना सकता है। अब यह आपका समय है कि आप अपना पुल कहाँ बनाने जा रहे हैं।

हम एक अंतरराष्ट्रीय भाषा संस्थान के रूप में आपको अपनी इच्छा को पूरा करने के लिए अंग्रेजी और आत्म विकास में संचार कौशल बढ़ाने का अवसर प्रदान करते हैं। इसमें अंग्रेजी के धाराप्रवाह वक्ता बनने के लिए अद्वितीय, रचनात्मक और व्यावहारिक कार्य प्रशिक्षण मॉड्यूल में से एक है।

अंग्रेजी बोलने के लिए अब साइकिल चलाने या तैराकी जैसे उदार कौशल के उपयोग के साथ एक व्यावहारिक प्रशिक्षण की आवश्यकता है, जिसे आप अपने पूरे जीवन में कभी नहीं भूलेंगे। आपको इस अंतरराष्ट्रीय भाषा पर सफलता और कमांड की शुभकामनाएँ।

आपका भवदीय,

कौशल किशोर



इंगलिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स
फ़्लूएंट स्पोकन
इंगलिश ग्रामर

FLUENT SPOKEN ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Kaushal Kishor



SpeakNowEnglish.Com
"Never Forget in Life"

About Author

Hi! I am Kaushal Kishor English Speaking Coach. I am training through creative, practical & meditational methods that you will never forget in your whole lifetime. It is one of the effective methods which will lead you 100% Success in your career. I know exactly what kinds of training it takes to make you master the English language. You will be surprised it is nothing to do with your previous experience, worksheet, homework, textbook, memorizing Vocabulary, Remembering Grammar, and Translating. I have created and invented **“SpeakNowEnglish.Com”**, which really helped thousands of people around the world to learn real English Speaking Fluently and it is a real life changing result. Dear friends life is too short and don't waste time and money on unrealistic ways of learning. Don't spend Expansive and poorly designed English Speaking Course that you have to remember and by the time you will forget. If you agree with your learning start transforming your English Speaking today with one of the finest and most tuned English Speaking coach. Language Can't be remembered it can be created & speak according to time and situation.

नमस्ते! मैं कौशल किशोर इंगलिश स्पीकिंग कोच हूँ। मैं रचनात्मक, व्यावहारिक और ध्यान विधियों के माध्यम से प्रशिक्षण देता हूँ। जिसे आप अपने पूरे जीवनकाल में कभी नहीं भूलेंगे। यह उन प्रभावी तरीकों में से एक है, जो आपको आपके करियर में 100% सफलता दिलाएगा। मुझे पता है, कि आपको इंगलिश भाषा में फ्लुएंसी हासिल करने के लिए किस तरह के प्रशिक्षण की जरूरत है। आपको आश्चर्य होगा कि इसका आपके पिछले अनुभव, कार्य, पाठ्यपुस्तक, शब्दावली, व्याकरण को याद रखने और इंगलिश के अनुवाद करने से कोई लेना-देना नहीं है। मैंने **"SpeakNowEnglish.Com"** बनाया और आविष्कार किया है, जिससे वास्तव में दुनिया भर के हजारों लोगों ने इंगलिश स्पीकिंग फ्लुएंटीली बोलना सीखा है, और यह एक वास्तविक जीवन बदलने वाला परिणाम है। प्रिय मित्रों, जीवन बहुत छोटा है और सीखने के अवास्तविक तरीकों पर समय और पैसा बर्बाद न करें। खराब तरीके से डिजाइन किए गए इंगलिश स्पीकिंग कोर्स में खर्च न करें जिसे आपको याद रखना है, और इसे आप भूल जाएंगे। भाषा को याद नहीं किया जा सकता है, इसे समय और स्थिति के अनुसार बनाया और बोला जाता

**Yours Sincerely,
Kaushal Kishor**

English Speaking Coach

Master in Education – University of Mumbai

Post Graduate MBA – NMIMS – Mumbai

Bachelor in Education & Psychology- University of Mumbai

Double Graduate in English – University of Mumbai

Author | Corporate Trainer | Life Coach | Career Coach

Train The Trainer | NLP | UGC-NET | UOM-PET

Mathematics & Engineering Mathematics

20+ Years of Experience

Published by
Speak Now Education

Pearl Plaza, 601, 6th Floor,
Station Road,
Andheri - West,
Mumbai - 400058.
India

Phone No. +91-9320188899
+91-9320755566

Email : speaknoweducation@gmail.com
www.speaknowenglish.com

Speak Now Finishing School®
Trade Mark Registration No. 2605195 | Date:
01/10/2013

© Fluent Spoken English Grammar
(English Speaking Course)

Author : Kaushal Kishor

ISBN : 978-81-954235-0-7

All right reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, computer systems, photographic, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronics, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher copyright holder.

Printed at : Unique Printers, Mumbai.
Email : uniqueprinters72@gmail.com

Contents (विषय सूची)

SL. No.	Content Heading (अनुक्रमांक विषय सूची)	Page No. (पृष्ठ संख्या)
1.	The Sentences	1
2.	Subject & Predicate	2
3.	The Phrase & Clause	5
4.	Parts of Speech	6
5.	The Noun: Kinds of Nouns	9
6.	The Noun: Gender	13
7.	The Noun: Number	15
8.	Articles	21
9.	Personal Pronouns	26
10.	Active Voice & Passive Voice	30
11.	From Classes & Structure Words	35
12.	The Sentences	48
13.	The Verb	60
14.	Time & Tenses	79
15.	Question Tag	99
16.	Emphatic With Do/Does/Did	114
17.	Interchange of Affirmative and Negative Sentences	119
18.	Removal of “Too”	126
19.	The Clause & The Complex Sentences	134
20.	Simple, Compound and Complex Sentences	145
21.	Voice	153
22.	Direct & Indirect Speech	187

23.	Prepositions	196
24.	Phrasal Verb	216

THE SENTENCE

(वाक्य)

1. शब्दों के बोलने अथवा लिखने में हम उनका प्रयोग प्रायः समूह में करते हैं;

उदाहरण- Little Jack Horner sat in a corner.

इस प्रकार के शब्दों का प्रयोग जिनका भाव पूर्ण है वाक्य (Sentence = सेण्टेन्स) कहलाता है।

Kinds of Sentences (वाक्यों के भेद)

2. वाक्य चार प्रकार के होते हैं:

(1) वे वाक्य जो वर्णन करें या स्वीकृति दें;

जैसे, Humpty Dumpty sat on a wall.

(2) वे वाक्य जो प्रश्न पूछें;

जैसे, Where do you live ?

(3) वे वाक्य जो आज्ञा या प्रार्थना प्रकट करें; जैसे,

Be quiet. Have mercy upon us.

(4) वे वाक्य जो बहुत गहरी भावनाओं को प्रकट करें; जैसे,

How cold the night is! How very cold the night is! What a shame!

वे वाक्य जो वर्णन करें या स्वीकृति प्रदान करें **Declarative** (डिक्लरेटिव) या **Assertive** (ऐसरटिव) वाक्य (सूचना देनेवाला अथवा विधिसूचक वाक्य) कहलाते हैं।

वह वाक्य जो प्रश्न पूछता है **Interrogative** (इण्टैरोगेटिव) वाक्य (प्रश्नवाचक वाक्य) कहलाता है।

वह वाक्य जो आज्ञा या प्रार्थना व्यक्त करे **Imperative** (इम्पैरेटिव) वाक्य (आज्ञा या प्रार्थना सूचक वाक्य) कहलाता है। वह वाक्य जो बहुत गहरी भावनाओं को व्यक्त करे

Exclamatory (एक्सक्लेमेटरी) वाक्य (विस्मय बोधक वाक्य) कहलाता है।

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

(उद्देश्य और विधेय)

3. वाक्य बनाते समय

(1) हम किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु का नाम लेते हैं; और

(2) उस व्यक्ति या वस्तु के सम्बन्ध में कुछ वर्णन करते हैं।

अर्थात् हमारे पास कोई ऐसा **subject** = सबजैक्ट (उद्देश्य) होना चाहिये जिसके सम्बन्ध में हम कुछ कहें और हम उस उद्देश्य के सम्बन्ध में कुछ व्यक्त करें। इसलिये हर वाक्य के दो भाग होते हैं:

(1) वह अंश या भाग जो उस व्यक्ति या वस्तु का वर्णन करे जिसके सम्बन्ध में हम बात कर रहे हैं वाक्य का उद्देश्य कहलाता है।

(2) वह अंश या भाग जो उद्देश्य के सम्बन्ध में कुछ बताये वाक्य का विधेय कहलाता है।

4. प्रायः वाक्य का उद्देश्य विधेय से पूर्व आता है किन्तु कभी कभी यह विधेय के पश्चात् भी रख दिया जाता है; जैसे, **Down went the Royal George. Sweet are the uses of adversity.**

5. **Imperative sentences** (आज्ञा सूचक वाक्यों) में उद्देश्य (**Subject**) छोड़ दिया जाता है; जैसे,

Sit down. [यहाँ पर **Subject You** है जो कि छिपा हुआ है]

Thank him. [यहाँ पर भी **Subject You** है जो कि छिपा हुआ है]

व्याकरण के अभ्यासार्थ

EXERCISE -1 (प्रश्नावली -1)

निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में **Subject** (उद्देश्य) और **Predicate** (विधेय) छाँटो:

1. **The cackling of geese saved Rome..**

2. **The boy stood on the burning deck.**

3. **Tubal Cain was a man of might.**

4. Stone walls do not a prison make.
5. The singing of the birds delights us.
6. Miss Kitty was rude at the table one day.
7. He has a good memory.
8. Bad habits grow unconsciously.
9. The earth revolves round the sun.
10. Nature is the best physician.
11. Edison invented the phonograph.
12. The sea hath many thousand sands.
13. We cannot pump the ocean dry.
14. Borrowed garments never fit well.
15. The early bird catches the worm.
16. All matter is indestructible.
17. Ascham taught Latin to Queen Elizabeth.
18. We should profit by experience.
19. All roads lead to Rome.
20. A guilty conscience needs no excuse.
21. The beautiful rainbow soon faded away.
22. No man can serve two masters.
23. A stick room should be well aired.
24. The dewdrops glitter in the sunshine.
25. I shot an arrow into the air.
26. A barking sound the shepherd hears.
27. The naked every day he clad.

DIFFICULT WORDS

man of might = शक्तिशाली prison जेल, कारागार revolve घूमना; = physician =

डॉक्टर; **invent** आविष्कार करना, **borrowed garments** = माँगे हुये कपड़े:
experience = अनुभव।

Write in Your Mother Tongue

[illegible]

THE PHRASE AND CLAUSE

(वाक्यांश और उपवाक्य)

6. “In a corner” (अर्थात कोने में) में शब्दों के समूह को देखो। यह भाव देता है। किन्तु पूर्ण भाव नहीं देता है। शब्दों का वह समूह जो भाव देता हो किन्तु पूर्ण भाव न देता हो वाक्यांश (Phrase = फ्रेज) कहलाता है।

निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में रोई लिखे हुये शब्दों के समूह वाक्यांश हैं:

1. The sun rises in the east.
2. Humpty Dumpty sat on a wall.
3. There came a giant to my door It was a sunset of great beauty.
4. The tops of the mountains were covered with snow.
5. Show me how to do it.

7. निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में टेढ़े लिखे हुये शब्दों के समूह को देखो:

1. He has a chain of gold.
2. He has a chain which is made of gold.

शब्दों का पहला समूह हमें वाक्यांश प्रतीत होता है।

शब्दों का दूसरा समूह of gold, नामक वाक्यांश के प्रतिकूल उद्देश्य (which) और विधेय (is made of gold) रखता है।

शब्दों का ऐसा समूह जो किसी वाक्य का अंश हो और उद्देश्य एवम् विधेय रखता हो उपवाक्य (Clause = क्लौज) कहलाता है।

निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में टेढ़े लिखे हुए शब्दों के समूह उपवाक्य हैं:

1. People who pay their debts are trusted.
2. We cannot start while it is raining.
3. I think that you have made a mistake.

PARTS OF SPEECH

(शब्द भेद)

8. शब्दों को उनके प्रयोग के अनुसार भिन्न-भिन्न भागों में विभाजित किया जाता है। अर्थात् उस काम के अनुसार जो वे किसी वाक्य में करते हैं।

Parts of Speech—पार्ट्स आफ स्पीच (शब्द-भेद) आठ होते हैं:

1. Noun (संज्ञा) **2. Adjective** (विशेषण) **3. Pronoun** (सर्वनाम) **4. Verb** (क्रिया) **5. Adverb** (क्रियाविशेषण) **6. Preposition** (सम्बन्ध सूचक अव्यय) **7. Conjunction** (समुच्चय-बोधक अव्यय) **8. Interjection** (विस्मयादि बोधक अव्यय)।

9. Noun (संज्ञा) किसी व्यक्ति, स्थान अथवा वस्तु के नाम को कहते हैं; जैसे,

1. Akbar was a great king.
2. Kolkata is on the Hooghly.
3. The rose smells sweet.
4. The sun shines bright.
5. His courage won him honour.

नोट-शब्द **वस्तु** के अन्तर्गत निम्नलिखित बातों का समावेश है।

- (1) वे सब चीजें जिनको हम देख, सुन, चख, छू अथवा सूँघ सकें;
- (2) वे सब चीजें जिनके विषय में हम विचार कर सकें किन्तु इन्द्रियों द्वारा न जान सकें।

10. Adjective (विशेषण) वह शब्द है जो **Noun** (संज्ञा) के ज्ञान में कुछ वृद्धिकरता है; जैसे,

1. He is a brave boy.
2. There are twenty boys in this class.

11. Pronoun (सर्वनाम) वह शब्द है जो **Noun** (संज्ञा) के स्थान पर प्रयोग किया जाय; जैसे, John is absent, because he is ill.

12. Verb (क्रिया) वह शब्द है जो किसी व्यक्ति, स्थान, या वस्तु के विषय में कुछ बताने के लिए प्रयोग किया जाय; जैसे,

1. The girl wrote a letter to her cousin.
2. Calcutta is a big town.
3. Iron and copper are useful metals.

13. Adverb (क्रिया विशेषण) वह शब्द है जो किसी Verb (क्रिया), **Adjective** (विशेषण), या किसी दूसरे **Adverb** (क्रिया विशेषण) के अर्थ में कुछ वृद्धि करने के लिए प्रयोग किया जाय; जैसे,

- He worked the sum quickly.
- This flower is very beautiful.
- She pronounced the word quite correctly.

14. Preposition (सम्बन्ध सूचक अव्यय) वह शब्द है जो किसी **Noun** (संज्ञा) या **Pronoun** (सर्वनाम) के साथ प्रयोग में आकर उस संज्ञा या सर्वनाम द्वारा सूचित व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु का सम्बन्ध किसी अन्य **Noun** (संज्ञा) या **Pronoun** (सर्वनाम) से प्रदर्शित करे; जैसे,

1. There is a cow in the garden.
2. The girl is fond of music.
3. A fair little girl sat under a tree.

15. Conjunction (समुच्चय बोधक अव्यय) वह शब्द है जो दो शब्दों या वाक्यों को जोड़ता है; जैसे,

1. Rama and Hari are cousins.
2. Two and two make four.
3. I ran fast, but missed the train.

16. Interjection (विस्मयादि बोधक अव्यय) वह शब्द है जो अचानक हृदय से निकलने वाले उद्गारों को प्रकट करे;

जैसे, Hurrah! We have won the game.

Alas! She is dead.

17. शब्दों का भिन्न-भिन्न भागों में विभाजन उनके द्वारा वाक्यों में किये जानेवाले कार्यों के अनुसार होता है इसलिये यह प्रत्यक्ष प्रकट है कि किसी शब्द का वाक्य में प्रयोग देखे बिना हम नहीं कह सकते कि यह शब्द किस **Parts of Speech** (शब्द भेद) से सम्बन्धित है।

निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में शब्द **after** का प्रयोग देखिये

1. They arrived soon **after**. (Adverb)
2. They arrived **after** us. (Preposition)
3. They arrived **after** we had left.

(Conjunction) ऊपर दिये हुये उदाहरणों द्वारा हमें प्रतीत होता है कि एक शब्द भिन्न-भिन्न Parts of Speech में प्रयोग किया जा सकता है।

व्याकरण के अभ्यासार्थ

EXERCISE-2 (प्रश्नावली -2)

निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में प्रत्येक टेढ़े लिखे हुए शब्द (**italicized word**) की Parts of Speech लिखते हुये प्रत्येक दशा में वर्गीकरण का कारण दीजिये:

1. *Still* waters run deep.
2. He *still* lives in that house..
3. *After* the storm comes the calm.
4. The *after* effects of this drug are bad.
5. The *up* train is late.
6. It weighs *about* a pound.
7. He told us all *about* the battle.
8. He was only a yard *off* me.
9. Suddenly one of the wheels came *off*.
10. Mahomedans *fast* in the month of Ramzan.

DIFFICULT WORDS

storm - तूफान, **calm** - शांति, **drug** - दवा, **battle** - लड़ाई, **suddenly** - एकदम, अचानक ।

THE NOUN: KINDS OF NOUNS

(संज्ञा और उसके भेद)

18. Noun (संज्ञा) वह शब्द है जो किसी व्यक्ति, स्थान या वस्तु के नाम को प्रकट करने के लिये प्रयोग में आये। नोट- वस्तु शब्द के अन्तर्गत विचार में आने वाली हर पदार्थ का वर्णन आ जाता है।

19. निम्नलिखित वाक्य को देखिये:

Ashoka was a wise king.

Ashoka नामक संज्ञा एक विशेष राजा की ओर संकेत करती है किन्तु **king** नामक संज्ञा किसी भी दूसरे राजा के लिये और अशोक के लिये प्रयोग की जा सकती है। हम **Ashoka** को **Proper Noun** (व्यक्तिवाचक संज्ञा) और **king** को **Common Noun** (जातिवाचक संज्ञा) कहेंगे।

इसी प्रकार

Sita **Proper Noun** है किन्तु **girl** **Common Noun** है।

Hari " " " " **boy** " " "

Kolkata " " " " **town** " " "

India " " " " **country** " " "

Girl नामक शब्द **Common Noun** (जातिवाचक संज्ञा) है क्योंकि इस शब्द से सम्पूर्ण जाति का बोध होता है किन्तु **Sita** नामक शब्द **Proper Noun** (व्यक्तिवाचक संज्ञा) है क्योंकि इस शब्द से किसी विशेष लड़की का बोध होता है।

परिभाषा: **Common Noun** (जातिवाचक संज्ञा) वह नाम है जो एक वर्ग या एकप्रकार के विभिन्न व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं को समान रूप से दिया जा सके।

परिभाषा: **Proper Noun** (व्यक्तिवाचक संज्ञा) किसी विशेष व्यक्ति या स्थान का नाम होता है।

[**Proper** का अर्थ है अपना निजी इसलिये **Proper Name** किसी का अपना निजी नाम

होता है।]

नोट नं. 1- Proper Noun का पहला शब्द सर्वदा capital letter (बड़े अक्षर) में लिखा जायगा।

नोट नं. 2- Proper Noun कभी कभी Common Noun की तरह प्रयोग में आता है; जैसे,

1. He was the Lukman (= the wisest man) of his age.

2. Kalidas is often called the Shakespeare (= the greatest dramatist) of India
Common Nouns के अन्तर्गत Collective Nouns और Abstract Nouns आ जाते हैं।

20. Collective Noun (समूहवाचक संज्ञा) उन नाम को कहते हैं जो किसी जाति के व्यक्तियों अथवा वस्तुओं को एक समुदाय का रूप देते हुये एक ही साथ कोई और नाम देकर वर्णन करें; जैसे,

Crowd, mob, team, flock, herd, army, fleet, jury, family, nation, parliament, committee.

A fleet = Ships या vessels का समुदाय अर्थात् जहाजी बेड़ा।

An army = सिपाहियों का समुदाय अर्थात् फौज

A crowd = आदमियों का समुदाय अर्थात् भीड़।

1. The poice dispersed the crowd.
2. The French army was defeated at Waterloo.
3. The jury found the prisoner guilty.
4. A herd of cattle is passing.

21. Abstract Noun (भाववाचक संज्ञा) प्रायः किसी पदार्थ से सम्बन्धित उस गुण, कर्म या अवस्था का नाम होता है जो उस पदार्थ से सम्बन्धित हो और जिसका विचार उस पदार्थ से पृथक किया जाय; जैसे,

गुण (Quality) Goodness, kindness, whiteness, darkness, hardness, bright ness, honesty, wisdom, bravery.

कर्म (Action)— Laughter, theft, movement, judgment, hatred.

अवस्था (State) Childhood, boyhood, youth, slavery sleep, sickness, death, poverty. Arts (कलाओं) और Sciences (विज्ञानों) के नाम [उदाहरणार्थ grammar(व्याकरण), music (संगीत), chemistry (रसायन विज्ञान) इत्यादि] भी भाववाचक संज्ञायें हैं।

[हम a brave soldier (वीर सिपाही), a strong man (शक्तिशाली व्यक्ति) और a beautiful flower (सुन्दर फूल) के विषय में कह सकते हैं किन्तु हम इन व्यक्तियों या वस्तुओं से पृथक इन गुणों के विषय में भी विचार कर सकते हैं और bravery (वीरता), strength (शक्ति) एवम् beauty (सुन्दरता) के विषय में कह सकते हैं। इसलिये हम कह सकते हैं कि इन व्यक्तियों या पदार्थों से पृथक कौन व्यक्ति इनका अनुभव करते हैं और इन गुण, अवस्था और कर्म का नामकरण कर सकते हैं। शब्द abstract का अर्थ है पृथक किया हुआ।]

22. Abstract Nouns बनाये जाते हैं:-

(1) विशेषणों से (Adjectives); जैसे,

Kind kindness; honest honesty.

[अधिकतर Abstract nouns इसी प्रकार बनाये जाते हैं।]

(2) क्रियाओं से (Verbs); जैसे,

Obey obedience, grow growth.

(3) जातिवाचक संज्ञाओं से (Common Nouns); जैसे,

Child childhood; slave slavery

व्याकरण के अभ्यासार्थ

EXERCISE-3 (प्रश्नावली-3)

निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में **Nouns** छोटे और बताओ कि वे **Common Noun, Proper Noun, Collective Noun** और **Abstract Noun** में से कौन से हैं:

1. The crowd was very big.
2. Always speak the truth.
3. We all love honesty.
4. Our class consists of twenty pupils.

5. The elephant has great strength.
6. Solomon was famous for his wisdom.
7. Cleanliness is next to godliness.
8. We saw a fleet of ships in the harbour.
9. The class is studying grammar.
10. The Nile overflows its bank every year.
11. A committee of five was appointed.
12. Nelson is famous for his victory at Trafalgar.
13. The soldiers were rewarded for their bravery.
14. Without health there is no happiness.
15. He gave me a bunch of grapes.
16. I recognized your voice at once.
17. Our team is better than theirs.
18. Never tell a lie.
19. Wisdom is better than strength.
20. He sets a high value on his time.
21. I believe in his innocence.
22. This room is thirty feet in length.
23. I often think of the happy days of childhood.
24. The streets of some of our cities are noted for their crookedness.
25. What is your verdict, gentlemen of the jury?

DIFFICULT WORDS

honesty = ईमानदारी; cleanliness = सफाई, harbour = बन्दरगाह; victory = विजय; innocence = निर्दोषता noted प्रसिद्ध; crookedness = टेपन; verdict = निर्णय।

THE NOUN: GENDER

(संज्ञा: लिंग)

23. तुम जानते हो कि प्राणी नर या मादा दोनों में से एक होता है। अब निम्नलिखित जोड़ों में लिखें हुये शब्दों की तुलना करो:

Boy	Lion	Hero	Cock-sparrow
Girl	Lioness	Heroine	Hen-sparrow

तुम क्या देखते हो ?

प्रत्येक जोड़े का पहला शब्द एक *male animal* (नर) का नाम है।

प्रत्येक जोड़े का दूसरा शब्द एक *female animal* (मादा) का नाम है।

वह संज्ञा जो पुरुषत्व बोधक हो पुल्लिंग (**Masculine Gender**) की होती है।

[**Gender** शब्द **Latin** भाषा के **genus** से बना है जिसका अर्थ है भेद या प्रकार ।]

वह **Noun** (संज्ञा) जो स्त्रीत्व बोधक हो **Feminine Gender** (स्त्रीलिंग) की होती है।

24. वह संज्ञा जो पुरुषत्व या स्त्रीत्व दोनों की बोधक हो **Common Gender** (उभयलिंग) की होती है; जैसे,

Parent, child, friend, pupil, servant, thief, relation, enemy, cousin, person, orphan, student, baby, monarch, neighbour, infant, etc.

25. वह संज्ञा जो न तो पुरुषत्व बोधक हो और न स्त्रीत्व बोधक हो (अर्थात् निर्जीव बोधक हो) **Neuter Gender** (नपुंसकलिंग) की होती है; जैसे, **Book, pen, room, tree, etc.** [**Neuter** का अर्थ है **neither** (दोनों में से एक भी नहीं) अर्थात् न पुरुष और न स्त्री।]

इस प्रकार यह देखा जायगा कि आधुनिक अंग्रेजी में संज्ञा का लिंग पूर्णरूप से पुरुषत्व और स्त्रीत्व की उपस्थिति या अनुपस्थिति से निर्धारित होता है। संज्ञा के रूप से लिंग निर्णय का कोई सम्बन्ध नहीं है। संज्ञा का स्वरूप बहुत सी दूसरी भाषाओं में लिंग निर्णायक होता है। उदाहरणार्थ उर्दू में बगीचा **Masculine** है और लड़की **Feminine** है।

नोट- **Collective nouns** (समूह वाचक संज्ञाओं) को **Neuter gender** (नपुंसक लिंग) का माना जाता है। चाहे वे सजीव बोधक ही क्यों न हों।

Young children और **lower animals** का भी उल्लेख **Neuter Gender** की भाँति होता है।

26. निर्जीव वस्तुओं को प्रायः **personified** कर लेते हैं। अर्थात् उनका वर्णन सजीव वस्तुओं की भाँति होता है। तब हम उनको **male** (पुरुष) या **Female** (स्त्री) मान लेते हैं।

प्रायः **Masculine Gender** का प्रयोग उन वस्तुओं के लिये होता है जो **strength** (शक्ति) तथा **violence** (हिंसा) की द्योतक हों; जैसे,

The Sun, Summer, Winter, Time, Death, etc.

The sun sheds his beams on rich and poor alike.

प्रायः **Feminine Gender** का प्रयोग उन वस्तुओं के लिये होता है जो **beauty** (सुंदरता), **gentleness** (सभ्यता) और **gracefulness** की द्योतक हों; जैसे,

The Moon, the Earth, Spring, Autumn, Nature, Liberty, Justice, Mercy, Peace, Hope, Charity, etc.

The moon has hid her face behind a cloud.

Spring has spread her mantle of green over the earth.

Peace hath her victories no less renowned than war.

इस प्रकार का प्रयोग पद्य में अधिक प्रचलित है किन्तु कुछ विशेष संज्ञाओं का गद्य में भी मानवीकरण (**personification**) कर देते हैं। जहाज (**ship**) के लिये सर्वदा **she** का प्रयोग होता है; जैसे,

The ship lost all her boats in the storm.

Write in Your Mother Tongue

THE NOUN: NUMBER

(संज्ञा: लिंग)

28. प्रत्येक जोड़े के दूसरे शब्द के परिवर्तन को देखो

she-bearjenny-ass maid-servanthen-sparrow she-goat -Box-Boxes
Ox-Oxen, Man-Men, Trees-Tree

प्रत्येक जोड़े का प्रथम शब्द एक वस्तु का बोधक है और प्रत्येक जोड़े का द्वितीय शब्द एक वस्तु से अधिक का बोधक है। में होगी; जैसे, वह संज्ञा जो एक व्यक्ति या वस्तु से अधिक की बोधक हो

Plural Number वह संज्ञा जो एक व्यक्ति या वस्तु की बोधक हो **Singular Number** (एकवचन)

Boy, girl, cow, bird, tree, book, pen, etc.

(बहुवचन) में होगी; जैसे, Boys, girls, cows, birds, trees, books, pens, etc.

इस प्रकार अंग्रेजी में दो वचन होते हैं- **Singular** (एकवचन) और **Plural** (बहुवचन)।

29. (1) **Plural** बनाने के नियम प्रायः संज्ञाओं के

एकवचन में - बढ़ाकर बहुवचन

Boy, boys; desk, desks; cow, cows. pen, pens; girl, girls; book, books; बनाते हैं; जैसे,

(2) किन्तु एकवचन को उन संज्ञाओं में जिनके अन्त में **-s, -sh, -ch (soft)**, या होता है बहुवचन बनाने में - बढ़ा देते हैं; जैसे,

Class, classes; kiss,

kisses; dish, dishes;

brush, brushes,

branch, branches,

match, matches; tax, taxes; watch, watches; box, boxes.

प्रायः जिन **Nouns** के अन्त में लगा होता है उनके **plural** बनाने में **singular** के अन्त में **-es** बढ़ा देते हैं;

जैसे, **Buffalo, buffaloes; mango, mangoes; hero, heroes; echo, echoes. potato, potatoes; cargo, cargoes; negro, negroes; volcano, volcanoes,**

EXCEPTIONS (अपवाद) :- **memento, mementos; Piano, pianos. canto, cantos; dynamo, dynamos; bamboo, bamboos; quarto, quartos.**

(3) जिन एकवचन की संज्ञाओं के अन्त में - हो और उससे पहले कोई consonant (व्यंजन) हो, उनका बहुवचन बनाने के लिये को में परिवर्तित कर **28 -y** बढ़ा देते हैं; जैसे, **Baby, babies; lady, ladies; city, cities, army, armies; story, stories; pony, ponies.**

(4) बहुत-सी संज्ञाएँ जिनके अन्त में **-f** या **fe** होता है उनके बहुवचन बनाने में **- या -fe** को में बदलकर **25** और बढ़ा देते हैं जैसे, **v -es** बढ़ा है; **wife, wives; Thief, thieves; life, lives; calf, calves; knife, knives; wolf, wolves; leaf, leaves; shelf, shelves. loaf, loaves;**

EXCEPTIONS (अपवाद) - Chief, chiefs ;dwarf, dwarfs; hoof, hoofs; roof, roofs; safe, safes; proof, proofs; gulf, gulfs; serf, serfs; strife, strifes.

30. कुछ संज्ञाओं का बहुवचन उनके **singular form** के अन्दर **vowel** (स्वर) को बदलकर बनाते हैं; जैसे, **Man, men woman, women; foot, feet; tooth, teeth; goose, geese; mouse, mice; louse, lice.**

31. कुछ ऐसी संज्ञाएँ हैं जिनका बहुवचन बनाने के लिये एकवचन के अन्त में **-en** बढ़ा देते हैं; जैसे, **Ox, oxen; child, children.**

32. कुछ संज्ञाओं के एकवचन और बहुवचन समान होते हैं उनमें कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है; जैसे,

Swine, sheep, deer, cod, trout, salmon.

Pair, dozen, score, gross hundred, thousand (जब अंकों के बाद में प्रयुक्त हो।)

1. I bought three dozen oranges.
2. Some people reach the age of three score and ten.
3. The car cost me five thousand rupees.
4. Stone, hundredweight.
5. He weighs above nine stone.
6. Twenty hundredweight make one ton.

33. कुछ संज्ञाएँ केवल बहुवचन में ही प्रयुक्त होती हैं।

(1) दो अंग वाले instruments (औजारों) के नाम; जैसे, Bellows, scissors, tongs, pincers, spectacles.

(2) कुछ पहनने के कपड़ों के नाम; जैसे, Trousers, drawers, breeches.

(3) बीमारियों के नाम; जैसे, Measles, mumps.

(4) खेलों के नाम; जैसे, Billiards, draughts.

(5) कुछ अन्य संज्ञाएँ जैसे, Annals, thanks, proceeds (विक्रय की), tidings, environs, nuptials, obsequies, assets, chattels.

34. कुछ संज्ञाएँ जो प्रारम्भ में एकवचन थीं किन्तु अब प्रायः होती हैं; जैसे, Alms, riches, eaves.

Riches do many things.

35. निम्नलिखित [plural forms का प्रयोग प्रायः एकवचन में होता है-

Mathematics, physics, mechanics, politics, news, innings.

Mathematics is his favourite study.

No news is good news.

The Hindus won by an innings and three runs. Means का प्रयोग

एकवचन और बहुवचन दोनों में होता है। किन्तु जब इसका अर्थ सम्पत्ति (wealth) में होता है तब यह सदैव बहुवचन होगा; जैसे,

He succeeded by this means (by these means) in passing the examination.

His means are small, but he has incurred no debt.

36. कुछ **Collective Nouns** ऐसे होते हैं जो देखने में एकवचन प्रतीत होते हैं किन्तु उनका प्रयोग बहुवचन में होता है; जैसे,

Poultry, cattle, vermin, people, gentry.

These poultry are mine. Whose are these cattle?

Vermin destroy our property and carry disease.

Who are those people (= persons) ? There are few gentry in this town. नोट- जब 'people' का प्रयोग **Common Noun** की तरह होता है तब उसका अर्थ 'nation' होता है और एकवचन बहुवचन दोनों में प्रयोग होता है; जैसे, The French are a hard-working and brave people.

There are many different peoples in Europe.

37. **Compound Nouns** का बहुवचन प्रायः मुख्य शब्द के अन्त में बढ़ाने से-बनता है; जैसे,

Singular (एकवचन)

Commander-in-chief

Coat-of-mail

Son-in-law

Step son

Step-daughter

Maid-servant

Passer-by

Looker-on Man-of-war

Plural (बहुवचन)

Commanders-in-chief

coats-of-mail

sons-in-law

step-sons

step-daughters

maid-servants(but man-servant, plural men-servants)

passers-by

lookers-on

men-of-war.

हम **spoonfuls** और **handfuls** कहते हैं क्योंकि **spoonful** और **handful** एक शब्दमाने जाते हैं। यह ध्यान रखना चाहिये कि **Brahman** और **Mussulman** नामक व्यक्तिवाचकसंज्ञाएँ **man** से नहीं बनी हैं अतः इनके बहुवचन **Brahmans** और **Mussulmans** हैं।

38. बहुत-सी संज्ञाएँ जो **Foreign languages** (विदेशी भाषाओं) से ली गई हैं उनके बहुवचन वही प्रयोग में आते हैं जो उन विदेशी भाषाओं में उनके बहुवचन हैं; जैसे, **Latin** भाषा से - **Erratum, errata; index, indices; radius, radii; formula, formulae** या (**formulas**); **memorandum, memoranda; terminus, termini** (या **terminuses**),

Greek भाषा से

parenthesis, parentheses; Axis, axes; crisis, crises, hypothesis, hypotheses; phenomenon, phenomena; basis, bases; analysis, analyses; criterion, criteria.

Italian भाषा से

#-**Bandit, handitti** (या **bandits**).

French भाषा से

Madame (madam), mesdames, monsieur, messieurs. Hebrew भाषा से Cherut, cherubim (या cherubs); seraph, seraphim (या seraphs).

39. Letters (अक्षरों), figures (संख्याओं), और अन्य symbols (चिह्नों)

का बहुवचन उनमें apostrophe और s बढ़ाकर बना लेते हैं;

जैसे,

There are more e's than a's in this page.

Dot your i's and cross your t's.

Add two 5's and four 2's.

40. प्रायः इस प्रकार कहा जाता है- The Miss Smiths (एकवचन, Miss Smith)

किन्तु हम इस प्रकार भी कहते हैं- The Misses Smith.

41. भाववाचक संज्ञाओं (Abstract Nouns) के बहुवचन नहीं होते हैं।

Hope, charity, love, kindness. किन्तु जब ऐसे शब्दों का प्रयोग बहुवचन में होता

है तब वे शब्द Common nouns (जातिवाचक संज्ञायें) माने जाते हैं; जैसे,

Provocations = उत्तेजना के कार्य या उदाहरण

Kindnesses = दयालुता के कार्य ।

Substances (द्रव्यों) या materials (पदार्थों) के नाम को Material Noun

(पदार्थवाचक संज्ञा) कहते हैं और इन संज्ञाओं का प्रयोग भी बहुवचन में होता है।

Copper, iron, tin, wood, etc.

जब इन संज्ञाओं का प्रयोग बहुवचन में होता है तब ऐसे शब्द Common Nouns

(जातिवाचक संज्ञायें) हो जाते हैं और इनके अर्थ भिन्न हो जाते हैं;

जैसे, Coppers = ताँबे के सिक्के; irons = जंजीरें; tins= टीन के कनस्तर; woods =

जंगलों ।

Write in Your Mother Tongue

Articles (आर्टिकल्स)

साधारणतया **a** या **an** और **the** नामक तीन शब्दों को **Articles** कहते हैं। वास्तव में ये तीनों शब्द **Demonstrative Adjectives** (संकेतवाचक विशेषण) हैं।

109. **Articles** दो होते हैं-**a** (या **an**) और **the**.

A या **am** को **Indefinite Article** कहते हैं, क्योंकि इनसे किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु का बोध नहीं होता है; जैसे, **a doctor**. अर्थात् **any doctor**,

111. **The** को **Definite Article** कहते हैं, क्योंकि वह किसी विशेष व्यक्ति याका बोध कराता है;

जैसे, **He saw the doctor** अर्थात् कोई निश्चित डॉक्टर

112. साधारण नियम के अनुसार एकवचन की जातिवाचक संज्ञा के पहले कईकोई

Article अवश्य आता है; जैसे, **This is a mango. Fight like a hero.**

Here is an elephant.

I like the novel you gave me.

किन्तु **general sense** में प्रयोग होने वाली एकवचन की जातिवाचक संज्ञाओं पहले कोई **Article** नहीं आता; जैसे,

Man is mortal.

A or An (A या An)

Sound (ध्वनि या उच्चारण) द्वारा **a** और **an** के प्रयोग का निर्णय किया जा सकत है।

उन शब्दों के पहले **an** आता है जिनका पहला अक्षर **vowel sound** देता है;

जैसे, **An ass, an enemy, an inkstand, an orange, an umbrella, an hour, an honest man, an heir.**

यह देखा जायगा कि **hour, honest, heir**, शब्दों का उच्चारण **vowel sound** से प्रारम्भ होता है क्योंकि प्रारम्भिक व्यंजन | बोला नहीं जाता है। व्यंजन ध्वनि से प्रारम्भ होने वाले शब्दों के पहले का प्रयोग होता है;

जैसे **A boy, a reindeer, a woman, a yard, a horse, a hole; also a university**

a unior, a European, a ewe, a unicorn, a useful article. क्योंकि वे शब्द (university, union, इत्यादिक) व्यंजन ध्वनि से आरम्भ होते हैं। अर्थात् इन शब्दों में 'यू' की ध्वनि है।

इसी प्रकार हम कहते हैं, a one-rupee note, such a one, a one-eyed man, क्योंकि one शब्द व्यंजन ध्वनि अर्थात् व से प्रारम्भ होता है।

An का प्रयोग प्रायः / से प्रारम्भ होने वाले उन शब्दों के पहले भी होता है जिनके first syllable accented नहीं होता अर्थात् प्रथम चरण जोर से नहीं बोला जाता An historical novel, an hotel.

Use of the Definite Article (डेफ़ीनिट आर्टिकल का प्रयोग)

The नामक Definite Article निम्नलिखित दशाओं में प्रयुक्त होता है:

(1) किसी विशेष व्यक्ति या वस्तु के पहले अथवा किसी ऐसे व्यक्ति या वस्तु के विषय में, जिसके बारे में पहले कुछ कहा जा चुका है;

जैसे The book you want is out of print. I dislike the fellow. Let us go to the club.

(2) यदि एकवचन की संज्ञा सम्पूर्ण जाति का बोध करे; जैसे, The cow is a useful animal. [या हम यह भी कह सकते हैं]

The horse is a noble animal. The cat loves comfort. "Cows are useful animals." The rose is the sweetest of all flowers. The banyan is a kind of fig tree. (यह नहीं कहना चाहिये "a kind of a fig tree" यह प्रायः सामान्य अशुद्धि है।)

यह ध्यान रखना चाहिये कि दो संज्ञाओं (man और woman) के पहले कोई article नहीं आता। यदि उनका प्रयोग general sense (व्यापक अर्थ में हो और संपूर्ण जाति को प्रकट करें।

Man is the only animal that uses fire.

Woman is man's mate.

(3) **Gulfs** (खाड़ियों), **rivers** (नदियों), **seas** (समुद्रों), **groups of islands** (द्वीप समूहों) और **mountain ranges** (पर्वतों की चोटियों) से पहले जैसे,

- The Persian Gulf.
- The Ganges is considered holy by the Hindus.
- London is on the Thames.
- The Red Sea.
- The British Isles.
- The Indian Ocean.
- The Laccadive islands.
- The Himalayas lie to the North of India.
- The Alps.

हम निम्नलिखित भी कहते हैं-**The Punjab, the United Provinces, the Deccan, the Carnatic.**

(4) पुस्तकों के नाम से पहले जैसे, **The Vedas, the Puranas, the liad, the Ramayana.** किन्तु हम कहते हैं-

Homer's had. Valmiki's Ramayana

(5) उनके पहले जो अपने किस्म की **unique** (द्वितीय)का नाम हो जैसे

The sun, the sky, the ocean, the sea, the earth कभी कभी **Common noun** के पहले **ahe** का प्रयोग **Abstract noun** का प्रकट करने के लिये होता है; जैसे, **At last the warrior (the warlike or martial spin** अर्थात् युद्ध से प्रेम रखने वाली प्रकृति) **in him was thoroughly aroused.]**

(6) **Proper noun** के केवल उस समय पहले **the** का प्रयोग होगा जब कोई **Adjective** उस **Proper noun** को **qualify** (विशेषता प्रकट करे अथवा कोई **Adjectival clause** (विशेषण उपकरूप उस **Proper noun** की व्याख्या करे जैसे, **The great Caesar, the immortal Shakespeare.**

The Mr. Roy whom you met last night is my uncle.

(7) **Superlatives** के साथ जैसे, **The darkest cloud has a silver lining.**

This is the best book of elementary chemistry.

(8) किसी **Adjective** से पहले जब उस **Adjective** के बाद वाला **Noun** छिपरहता है; जैसे, **The poor are always with us.**

(9) **Superlative** का भाव प्रकट करने के लिये, किसी **Noun** से पहले (**with emphasis**) = जोर के साथ) अर्थात् **Superlative** का भाव प्रकट करने के लिये ऐसे **Noun** के पहले the का प्रयोग होता है जिस पर अधिक जोर दिया जाये; जैसे, **The verb is the word (the chief word अर्थात् मुख्य शब्द) in sentence.**

(10) **Comparative degree** में **Adverb** की तरह से जैसे, **The more the merrier. (By how much more, by so much the merrier.)**
The more they get, the more they want.

Indefinite Article का प्रयोग

Indefinite Article का प्रयोग होता है-

(1) अपने मौलिक सूचक एक इकाई के भाव को प्रकट करने में जैसे

- **Twelve inches make a foot.**
- **Not a word was said.**
- **A word to the wise is sufficient.**
- **A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.**

(2) किसी निश्चित व्यक्ति या वस्तु के अस्पष्ट रूप से प्रकट करने पर जैसे, **A Ranchod Pitamber** (= अर्थात् कोई निश्चित व्यक्ति जिसका नाम रणछोड़ पिताम्बर है) **is suspected by the police. One evening a beggar came to my door.**

(3) **Any** के भाव में किसी व्यक्ति को किसी वर्ग (**class**) के प्रतिनिधि के रूप में प्रकट करने पर जैसे, **A pupil should obey his teacher. A cow is a useful animal.**

(4) **Proper noun** को **Common noun** की तरह प्रयोग करने पर; जैसे, **A Daniel come to Judgment!**

(A Daniel एक बहुत होशियार मनुष्य)

Omission of the Article (Article का प्रयोग न होना)

Article का निम्नलिखित दशाओं में प्रयोग नहीं होता है-

(1) **Common noun** के पहले जब उसका प्रयोग व्यापक रूप में हो; जैसे,

- Man is mortal.
- What kind of flower is it?

(2) **Material nouns** से पहले; जैसे,

- Gold is a precious metal.
- Cotton grows in India, America and Egypt.

(3) **Proper nouns** से पहले जैसे,

- Delhi is the capital of India.
- Bombay is a big city.
- Newton was a great philosopher.

नोट- Proper nouns के पहले article के प्रयोग होने पर उनको Common nouns माना जाता है; जैसे,

This man is a second Newton [अर्थात् न्यूटन के समान विद्वान।]

(4) He was the napoleon of his age [अर्थात् अपने समय का सबसे प्रसिद्ध सेनापति।]

Mumbai is the Manchester of India

[अर्थात् बम्बई भारत वर्ष का एक बड़ा शिल्प-प्रधान नगर है।]

The Earl of Derby is a Stanley [अर्थात् स्टैनली वंश का वंशज]

Write in Your Mother Tongue

Personal Pronouns

(पुरुषवाचक सर्वनाम)

जो शब्द के बदले प्रयोग किया जाये उसे **Pronoun** (सर्वनाम) कहते हैं।

[**Pronoun** का अर्थ है-संज्ञा के स्थान पर।] परिभाषा **Noun** के स्थान पर प्रयोग होने वाले शब्द को **Pronoun** कहते हैं।

निम्नलिखित वाक्यों को पढ़ी-/ **am young**.

- **Thou art young.**
- **We are young.**
- **He (she, it) is young.**
- **You are young.**
- **They are young.**

1. **We, thou, you, he (she, it), they** को **Personal Pronouns** (पुरुषवाचक सर्वनाम) कहते हैं क्योंकि ये तीन व्यक्तियों का बोध कराते हैं

(1) बात करने वाला,

(2) बात सुनने वाला,

(3) जिसके विषय में बात की जाय।/ और **we** सर्वनामों को **Personal Pronouns of the First Person** (पुरुषवाचक- उत्तम पुरुष) कहते हैं क्योंकि ये शब्द बातचीत करने वाले के बोधक हैं।

Thou और **you** सर्वनामों को **Personal Pronouns of the Second Person** (पुरुषवाचक-मध्यम पुरुष) कहते हैं क्योंकि ये शब्द बातचीत सुनने वाले के बोधक हैं।

[नोट- अब **You** का प्रयोग एकवचन और बहुवचन दोनों में होता है।] **He (she)** और **they** नामक शब्द उस व्यक्ति या व्यक्तियों के बोधक हैं जिनके विषय में बातचीत की जा रही है। इन शब्दों को **Personal Pronouns of the Third Person** (पुरुषवाचक सर्वनाम अन्य पुरुष) कहते हैं। ॥ यद्यपि उस वस्तु का बोधक है। जिसके विषय में

बातचीत चल रही है तथापि इसे **Personal Pronoun of the Third Person** कहते हैं। [पुरुषवाचक सर्वनाम अन्य पुरुष वास्तव में संकेतवाचक सर्वनाम होते हैं।]

Forms of the Personal Pronouns

(पुरुषवाचक सर्वनामों के स्वरूप)

पुरुषवाचक सर्वनामों के विभिन्न स्वरूप निम्नलिखित हैं-

First Person उत्तम पुरुष (पुलिंग या स्त्रिलिंग)

Nominative (कर्ताकारक)

एकवचन / बहुवचन - **we**

Possessive (सम्बन्धकारक) **my, mine, our, ours**

Accusative (कर्मकारक) **me, us**

Second Person — मध्यम पुरुष (पुलिंग या स्त्रिलिंग)

बहुवचन / एकवचन - **you thou**

Nominative (कर्ताकारक)

Possessive (सम्बन्धकारक) **they, thine your, yours**

Accusative (कर्मकारक) **thee, you**

[**नोट**- जैसा ऊपर बताया जा चुका है कि मध्यम पुरुष एक वचन का प्रयोग अबसाधारणतया नहीं होता है।]

Third Person -अन्य पुरुष

(Plural) बहुवचन(Singular) एकवचन **Neuter,**

All Genders. Masculine, Feminine,

it, they, she, he, Nominative (कर्ताकारक) **their, theirs**

Possessive (सम्बन्धकारक) **his her, hers it's the m it her him**

Accusative (कर्मकारक)

नोट नं. 1- यह देखा जायगा कि **Personal Pronouns** में से अधिकांश के

Possessive Cases में दो स्वरूप हैं। इन स्वरूपों में से **my our thy, your, her, और their** को **Possessive Adjectives** कहते हैं क्योंकि इनका प्रयोग **nouns** के साथ होता है और ये **Adjectives** का कार्य करते हैं; जैसे,

- This is my book.
- Those are your books.
- That is her book.

Possessive Adjectives को कभी कभी Pronominal Adjectives कह देते हैं क्योंकि ये Pronouns से बनाये जाते हैं।

नोट नं.

2- His का प्रयोग Adjective और Pronoun दोनों रूप में होता है; जैसे, This is his book. (Possessive Adjective) This book is his. (Possessive Pronoun) निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में टेढ़े लिखे हुये शब्द Possessive Pronouns हैं-

- This book is mine.
- Those books are yours.
- That book is hers.
- That idea of yours is excellent.

Third Person के Pronoun के तीन Genders होते हैं-

Masculine: he

Feminine: she

Neuter: it

It- इस सर्वनाम का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित दशाओं में होता है-

(1) बेजानदार वस्तुओं के लिये; जैसे, Here is your book; take it away.

(2) जानवरों के लिये जब तक कि हम स्पष्ट रूप से यह न कहें कि यह जानवर male (नर) है अथवा female (मादा); जैसे, He loves his dog and cannot do without it.

The horse fell and broke its leg.

(3) छोटे बच्चे के लिये, जब तक कि हमें स्पष्ट रूप से उसके sex (लिंग) के विषयमें न पता हो जैसे,

When I saw the child it was crying.

That baby has torn its clothes.

(4) किसी पूर्ववर्ती कथन के विषय में;

जैसे, He is telling what is not true; and he knows it. He deserved his punishment; and he knew it.

(5) To be verb से पूर्व provisional या temporary (सामायिक अथवा क्षणिक) subject के रूप में, जब वास्तविक subject बाद में आये; जैसे, It is easy to find fault. [To find fault is easy.]

- It is doubtful whether he will come.

- It is certain that you are wrong.

(6) बाद में आने वाले noun या pronoun पर जोर (बल) देने के लिये; जैसे,

- It was you who began the quarrel.

- It was / who first protested.

- It was at Versailles that the treaty was made.

- It is a silly fish that is caught twice with the same bait.

- It is an ill wind that blows nobody good.

(7) Impersonal verb (व्यक्ति से सम्बन्ध न रखने वाली क्रिया) के indefinite nominative (अनिश्चित कर्ता) की तरह; जैसे, It rains. It snows.

If thunders.

It सर्वनाम इस दशा में किसी संज्ञा के स्थान पर प्रयुक्त दृष्टिगोचर नहीं होता है यद्यपि क्रिया से कर्ता की पूर्ति की जा सकती है। इस प्रकार 'It rains' का अर्थ हुआ 'The rain rains'.

इस प्रकार प्रयोग में आने वाला it शब्द Impersonal Pronoun कहलाता है; और इसी प्रकार rains क्रिया भी Impersonal

Write in Your Mother Tongue

ACTIVE VOICE AND PASSIVE VOICE

(कर्तृवाच्य और कर्मवाच्य)

तुलना करो-

1. Rama helps Hari.

2. Hari is helped by Rama.

यह देखा जायगा कि ऊपर लिखे हुये दोनों वाक्य एक ही भाव को प्रकट करते हैं। किन्तु वाक्य नं. 1 में, क्रिया का स्वरूप यह दिखाता है कि कर्ता स्वयं कोई कार्य करता है। [Rama (कर्ता) कोई काम करता है।] Helps क्रिया Active Voice (ऐक्टिव वोइस) में है।

वाक्य नं. 2 में, क्रिया का स्वरूप यह दिखाता है कि कर्ता के लिये कोई कार्य किया गया है। [हरी के लिये कोई कार्य किया गया है।] Is helped क्रिया Passive Voice (पैसिव वोइस) में है।

परिभाषा क्रिया उस समय Active Voice में होती है जब उसका स्वरूप (से वाक्य नं. 1 में) प्रकट करता है कि कर्ता द्वारा निर्दिष्ट व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु का कार्य कर है अर्थात् किसी काम के करने वाले हैं।

इस Voice को Active Voice इसलिये कहा जाता है क्योंकि का द्वारा निर्दिष्ट व्यक्ति कार्य करता है। परिभाषा क्रिया इस समय Passive Voice में होती है जब उसका स्वरूप (जैसे वाक्य नं. 2 में) प्रकट करता है कि कर्ता द्वारा निर्दिष्ट व्यक्ति अथवा वस्तु के लिये किया गया है।

इस Voice को Passive Voice इसलिये कहा जाता है क्योंकि कर्ता द्वारा निर्दिष्ट व्यक्ति या वस्तु Active नहीं है किन्तु Passive है अर्थात् किसी काम का प्रभाव उन पर पड़ता है। परिभाषा - Voice (वाच्य) क्रिया के उस स्वरूप को कहते हैं जो यह प्रकट करे कि कर्ता द्वारा निर्दिष्ट व्यक्ति या वस्तु कोई काम करते हैं या कोई काम किसी दूसरे द्वारा उनके लिये किया जाता है।

Active Voice	Passive Voice
Sita Loves Savitri.	Savitri is loves by sita
The mason is building the wall.	The wall is being built by the mason.
The peon opened the gate.	The gate was opened by the peon.
Some boys were helping the wounded man.	he wounded man wasbeing helped by some boys.
He will finish the work in a fortnight.	The work will be finished by him in a fortnight.
Who did this ?	By whom was this done?
Why did your brother write such a letter ?	Why was such a letter written by your brother?

यह देखा जायगा कि जब **Active Voice** की क्रिया **Passive Voice** में बदली है, तो **Active Voice** की सकर्मक क्रिया का कर्म (Object) **Passive Voice** की क्रिय का कर्ता (Subject) बन जाता है।

[इस प्रकार वाक्य नं. 1 में **Savitri** जो कि **Active Voice** की क्रिया **loves** का कर्म है **Passive Voice** की क्रिया **is loved** का कर्ता बन गई।]

चूँकि **Active Voice** का कर्म **Passive Voice** का कर्ता हो जाता है अतः यह निष्कर्ष निकाला जाता है कि केवल सकर्मक क्रियाओं (**Transitive Verbs**) का ही प्रयोग **Passive Voice** में किया जा सकता है क्योंकि अकर्मक क्रिया के कर्म नहीं होता।

व्याकरण के अभ्यासार्थ EXERCISE 46 (प्रश्नावली - 46)

निम्नलिखित वाक्यों में क्रियाओं को देखकर बताओ कि वाक्य **Active Voice** में है या **Passive Voice** में-

1. The cat killed the mouse.'
2. We compelled the enemy to surrender
3. The boy was bitten by a dog.
4. The thief was caught.
5. The boy made a kite.
6. The ship was burned.
7. The young man made a disturbance at the meeting.
8. The captive was bound to a tree.
9. The bird was killed by a cruel boy.
10. The sudden noise frightened the horse.
11. He is beloved by all.
12. The exhibition was opened by the Prince of Wales...
13. I see a dark cloud.
14. His command was promptly obeyed.
15. Some of the cargo had been damaged by the sea water.
16. Nothing will be gained by hurry.
17. The dog chased the sheep.
18. This letter was posted last night.
19. The field is ploughed.
20. The dog was teased by the boy.
21. The cat drank all the milk.
22. A stone struck me on the head.
23. The old gentleman takes snuff.
24. The money was lost.

25. The letter has just been posted.

DIFFICULT WORDS

surrender = आत्मसमर्पण; captive = कैदी; exhibition = नुमाइश-प्रदर्शनी

promptly = तुरन्त; cargo जहाज पर रखा हुआ सामान; damaged हानि hurry = जल्दी।

रचनार्थ प्रश्नावली

निम्नलिखित वाक्यों के **Passive Voice** बनाओ-

1. The cat killed the mouse.
2. The man cut down the tree.
3. Columbus discovered America.
4. His teacher praised him.
5. The boy teased the dog.
6. The syce feeds the horse every day.
7. The police arrested him.
8. Rama was making a kite.
9. The boy caught the ball.
10. My father will write a letter.
11. I will conquer him.
12. He kept me waiting.
13. The hunter shot the lion.
14. Hari opened the door.
15. A policeman caught the thief.
16. Sohrab threw the ball.
17. He scored twenty runs.
18. Your behaviour vexes me.
19. Manners reveal character.
20. He made a very remarkable discovery

21. Little strokes fell great oaks.

22. Dhondu will bring the pony.

23. Everyone loves him.

24. My cousin has drawn this picture.

25. We expect good news.

26. The farmer gathers the harvest.

27. His own brother swindled him

28. The recitation pleased the Inspector.

DIFFICULT WORDS

discover = खोजना; **vex** = परेशान करना, दुःख देना; **swindlerecitation** = वर्णन।

Write in Your Mother Tongue

[illegible]

Form Classes & Structure Words

अब **Form Classes** और **Structure Words** को समझें। आप जानते हैं कि **traditional grammar** में अंग्रेजी के तमाम शब्दों को आठ वर्गों में विभाजित किया गया है और उनमें से प्रत्येक को **Part of Speech** के नाम से संबोधित किया गया है, परंतु आधुनिक युग के **grammarians** ने अंग्रेजी के शब्दों का एक नया वर्गीकरण किया है, जिसके अनुसार शब्दों के सिर्फ दो भेद हैं

1. Form Classes

2. Structure Words

यहाँ आपको यह जानना है कि इस नए वर्गीकरण का आधार क्या है और प्रत्येक वर्ग में कौन-कौन शब्द आते हैं।

Form Classes: इसके अंतर्गत सिर्फ वैसे शब्द आते हैं, जो **Morphemes** से प्रभावित होकर अपना रूप बदलते हैं। जैसे – **cat, play, fast** इत्यादि। जब इनके साथ विभिन्न **Morphemes** प्रयुक्त किए जाते हैं तब कुछ ऐसे शब्द बनते हैं, जो **grammatically** अपने मूलरूप और अर्थ से भिन्न होते हैं। जैसे **cat** से **cats, play** से **plays, played, playing playful, etc** तथा **fast** से **faster, fastest, fasten, unfasten, fastness, etc.**

Form Classes के निम्नलिखित चार भेद हैं

1. **Nouns:** **cat/cats, boy/boys, box/boxes:**

2. **Adjectives:** **fast/faster/fastest, easy/easier/easiest**

3. **Verbs:** **play/played, talk/talked**

4. **Adverbs:** **happily, beautifully, slowly**

Note: कुछ **Adjectives** (जैसे – **my, your some each, etc**), कुछ **Verbs** (जैसे-**am, is, are, etc**) तथा कुछ **Adverbs** (जैसे – **very, too, etc**) ऐसे हैं, जिनपर **Morphemes** का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है। ऐसे **Adjectives, Verbs** तथा **Adverbs** को **Form Classes** के अंतर्गत नहीं रखा गया है। इन्हें क्रमशः **Determiners, Auxiliaries** तथा **Intensifiers** के रूप में **Structure Words** के अंतर्गत रखा गया है।

Some More Hints on Form Classes:

(i) चूँकि **Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs** और **Adverbs** **certain Morphemes** की मदद से अपने रूप को परिवर्तित करते हैं, अतः इन्हें इनके **forms** से पहचाना जा सकता है।

(ii) इनमें से प्रत्येक को **sentence** में इनके स्थान से भी पहचाना जा सकता है। (i) और (ii) को समझने के लिए इनपर विचार करें

Doggles wannned poggles. Doms panethed topjects.

उपर्युक्त सभी words meaningless हैं। इनका कोई **dictionary** meaning नहीं है।

फिर भी अगर हम यह मान लें कि ये **words** हैं और प्रयुक्त **combinations Sentences** हैं, तो इनके **forms** तथा **structures** के आधार पर हम निम्नलिखित निष्कर्ष पर पहुँच सकते हैं

1. **Doggles, poggles, doms** और **topjects Plural Nouns** हैं, जैसा कि वाक्य में इनके स्थान तथा इनके अंत में प्रयुक्त **Morpheme (-s/es)** से स्पष्ट है।

2. **wanned** और **panethed Verbs in Past Tense** है, जैसा कि वाक्य में इनके स्थान तथा इनके अंत में प्रयुक्त **Morpheme (-s/es)** से स्पष्ट है।

इन सभी तथ्यों को ध्यान में रखते हुए हम यह कह सकते हैं कि **Nouns, Verbs,**

Adjectives और **Adverbs** को **Form Classes** क्यों कहते हैं **Nouns Verbs, Adjectives** और **Adverbs** को **Form Classes** कहते हैं क्योंकि इनमें से प्रत्येक **class** के **words** वाक्यों में बराबर कुछ खास दिए गए स्थानों में ही प्रयुक्त होते हैं और ऐसे शब्दों को उनके **forms** (रूप) से पहचाना जा सकता है।

(**Nouns, verbs, adjectives and adverbs are called form classes because each one of them occupies a certain set of positions in sentences and they have features of forms.**)

Structure Words

उन सभी शब्दों को **Structure Words** कहा जाता है, जिनपर **Morphemes** का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है। इनका मुख्य काम **Sentence** के **Structure** को स्पष्ट करना होता है।

Structure Words के भेद-Structure Words के मुख्य भेद निम्नलिखित हैं -

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------------|
| 1. Determiners | 6. Conjunctions |
| 2. Pronouns | 7. Interjections |
| 3. Prepositions | 8. Sentence connectors |
| 4. Auxiliaries | 9. Subordinators |
| 5. Intensifiers | 10. Question words |

1. **Determiners:** **Morphemes** के प्रभाव से मुक्त वे सभी शब्द **Determiners** कहलाते हैं जिनके बाद किसी **Noun** का प्रयोग होना आवश्यक हो जाता है। इस प्रकार **Determiner** के प्रयोग से यह सूचना मिलती है कि अब **Noun** आने वाला है। उदाहरण के लिए, जब आप किसी **Sentence** में **a an, the my, your** इत्यादि लिखा देखते हैं, तब आप यह जान जाते हैं कि इनके बाद कोई न कोई **Noun** अवश्य आने वाला है। **Determiner** के तुरंत बाद **Noun** आ सकता है या **Determiner** और **Noun** के बीच में **qualifying words** रह सकते हैं, लेकिन सभी स्थितियों में **Determiner** के बाद **Noun** आएगा, इस बात की झलक दिखाई पड़ती है। अर्थात् **Determiner Noun** के **arrival** का सूचक है।

निम्नलिखित प्रमुख Determiners हैं -

(a) Articles : a, an, the

(b) Possessive Adjectives : my, your, our, his, her, its, their

(c) Demonstrative Adjectives : this, that, these, those

(d) Adjectives of Number and Quantity:

One, two, three, four,

First, second, third, fourth,

Double, twice, thrice

One third, two fifths,

All many next a little

Both any other the little

Half several few much

Some most a few whole

More no the few enough

Less last little

(e) Distributive Adjectives: each, every, either, neither, both

(f) Interrogative Adjectives: what, which, whose

(g) Some phrases denoting Quantity and Number:

Plenty of	a large number of	a small amount of
A lot of	a great deal of	a large amount of
Lots of	a good deal of	

अब कुछ Sentences दिए जा रहे हैं, जिनमें Determiners के प्रयोग को देखें और समझें -

- I have a red pen.
- She was a very beautiful girl.
- My brother is a teacher.
- This cat is very beautiful.
- Every boy has a pen.
- Either way is safe.
- Which class do you read in?

- What work will you do?
- I need some apples/milk.
- She has one son and three daughters. Both books were out of the library.
- The whole town was destroyed by fire.
- There were a large number of students there.

Note 1. जब वाक्य में **This, That, These** और **Those** के साथ **Nouns** जुड़े नहीं रहते हैं, तब इन्हें **Determiners** नहीं कहते हैं। वैसी अवस्था में इन्हें **Demonstrative Pronouns** कहते हैं। जैसे, इन वाक्यों में **This, That, These** और **Those Demonstrative Pronouns** हैं

- This / That is my pen.
- These / Those are flowers.

Note 2. **This / That / These / Those** के अलावा और भी कई **Determiners** हैं, जिनका प्रयोग **Pronouns** के रूप में भी होता है। ये हैं -

some, all, most, many, more, several, both, half, enough, one.

either, neither, each, what, which, whose, etc.

Some cows are gentle.

Some are gentle.

(some – pronoun)

(some - pronoun)

I have found some.

(some - pronoun)

(either determiner)

Some of you are guilty. Either way is safe.

Either of the ways is safe.

(either - pronoun)

(either - pronoun)

You can choose either.

Which is yours?

(which – pronoun)

(which – determiner)

Which book is yours?

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि **Determiners** की सूची में हमने जितने शब्दों का उल्लेख किया है, उनमें से अधिकांश बिना **Nouns** के प्रयुक्त हो सकते हैं या अपने बाद **of construction** ले सकते हैं। इन दोनों ही स्थितियों में उन्हें **Pronouns** कहेंगे।

Determiners और Adjectives में अंतर

(i) **Traditional grammar** में **Determiners** की चर्चा नहीं है, पर **Adjectives** की चर्चा है। आधुनिक **grammar** में आप यह समझ लें कि उन **Adjectives** को दो भागों में बाँट दिया गया है। एक भाग में जैसे **Adjectives** है जिनके रूप नहीं बदलते हैं और दूसरे भाग में जैसे **Adjectives** हैं जिनके रूप बदलते हैं। जिनके रूप नहीं बदलते, उन्हें **Determiners** के रूप में वर्गीकृत किया गया है और जिनके रूप बदलते हैं, उन्हें पुराने नाम **Adjectives** से ही संबोधित किया गया है।

(ii) **Determiners Structure Words** के अंग हैं और **Adjectives Form Classes** के ।

(iii) **Determiners** हमेशा **Nouns** के पहले आते हैं। **Adjectives Nouns** के पहले या बाद में भी आ सकते हैं।

प्रयोग के अनुसार Determiners के तीन भेद हैं

Predeterminers	Central Determiners	Postdeterminers
all, both, half	a, an, the	one, two, three, etc
double, twice, etc	this, that, these, those	first, second, etc.
one third, etc	my, your, his, etc	next, last, other, etc.
what, such, etc (what a boy, such a boy)	what, which, whose (Interrogative Adjective)	many, few, little, several, more, etc (Quantifiers)
	some, any, no, every, each, either, neither, enough, much	

उपर्युक्त तालिका से स्पष्ट है कि यदि वाक्य में **Central Determiner** के साथ **Predeterminer** का प्रयोग करना हो तो पहले **Predeterminer** आएगा, उसके बाद **Central Determiner**.

इसी प्रकार यदि वाक्य में **Central Determiner** के साथ **Postdeterminer** का प्रयोग करना हो तो पहले **Central Determiner** आएगा और उसके बाद **Postdeterminer**. (pre = पहले post = बाद में)

- All the boys were present.
- I want half the butter. All these cars are mine.
- All this rice is to be sold. I have read all his six novels.
- I go there twice a week.
- What a nuisance!
- This is my first book.
- The two blue cars belong to me.
- I want some more milk.
- His many friends never deserted him.
- Have you got any more coffee?

ऊपर लिखे सभी तथ्यों को जानने बाद आपके लिए यह जानना जरूरी है कि किसी खास **Determiner** के बाद जो **Noun** प्रयुक्त होगा यह निम्नलिखित में से कौन-कौन हो सकता है

Uncountable Noun (water, love, etc)

Singular Countable Noun (cow, dog, man, town, tree, etc) **Plural Countable**

Noun (cows, dogs, men, trees, apples, etc)

Write in Your Mother Tongue

2. Pronouns: I, me, mine, we, us, ours, you, yours, she, her, hers, he, his, they, them, theirs Pronouns Traditional Grammar में किया है। ये किसी Noun के बदले में प्रयुक्त होते हैं।

चूँकि इनपर Morphemes का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है, इसलिए इन्हें Structure Words के अंतर्गत रखा गया है।

3. Prepositions: at, in, with, without, into, after, for, under, above before इत्यादि Prepositions है। आपने इनका अध्ययन Traditional Grammar में किया है। इनपर Morphemes का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है। इसलिए इन्हें भी Structure Words के अंतर्गत रखा गया है।

4. Auxiliaries: am, is, are, was, were. do. does, did, shall will, can, could, may. might, would, should, must, ought safe Auxiliaries हैं। इनकी कार्यप्रणाली Lexical Verbs (जैसे- go, eat, laugh, etc.) से पूर्णतः भिन्न है। ये Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं। इसलिए इन्हें भी Structure Words के अंतर्गत रखा गया है।

Note: इनमें से कुछ (जैसे – do, does, did, etc) का प्रयोग Lexical Verb के रूप में भी होता है।

5. Intensifiers: Traditional Grammar में आपने Adverbs का अध्ययन किया है। आधुनिक वर्गीकरण में इन्हें दो भागों में बाँटा गया है। वैसे Adverbs जिनपर Morphemes का प्रभाव पड़ता है, उन्हें Form Classes के अंतर्गत रखा गया है और उन्हें पुराने नाम Adverbs से ही संबोधित किया गया है। वैसे Adverbs जिनपर Morphemes का प्रभाव नहीं पड़ता है, उन्हें Structure Words के अंतर्गत रखा गया है और उनमें से कुछ को Intensifiers तथा कुछ को Question words से संबोधित किया गया है। Intensifiers वे हैं जो Adjectives/ Adverbs के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर उनके अर्थ को और अधिक जोरदार बनाते हैं। निम्नलिखित प्रमुख Intensifiers हैं very, rather, more, most, quite, too, etc.

6. Conjunctions: Conjunctions दो या दो से अधिक words/clauses/ sentences को जोड़ते हैं, and but or nor, yet इत्यादि प्रमुख Conjunctions हैं। ये Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं। इसलिए इन्हें भी Structure Words के अंतर्गत रखा गया है।

7. Interjections: Alas Hurrah, Ah, Hello इत्यादि Interjections हैं। ये सभी Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं, अतः इन्हें Structure Words के अंतर्गत रखा गया है।

8. Sentence connectors: Sentence connectors सामान्यतया दो Sentences को जोड़ते हैं, जैसे He did not obey the rule, therefore, his passport was cancelled. Since sculptures in stone are very durable, most museums contain a large number of stone statues. यहाँ therefore और since का प्रयोग Sentence connector के रूप में हुआ है। इसी प्रकार hence, so, but, yet, etc जब दो स्वतंत्र वाक्यों को जोड़ते हैं, उन्हें Sentence connectors कहा जाता है।

9. Subordinators: Subordinators, Subordinate Clauses के आने का संकेत देते हैं। ये Morphemes के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं, अतः इन्हें भी Structure Words के अंतर्गत रखा गया है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें

- He did not go to school because he was ill.
- I shall go before he comes. Wait till I return.
- I don't know whether she has come.

इन वाक्यों में because, before, till, whether और what से Subordinate Clauses] शुरू हुए हैं। अतः इन्हें Subordinators कहेंगे। इसी प्रकार जब as, when, which, where, though, if, since, etc. से Subordinate Clauses शुरू होते हैं। तब ये Subordinators कहे जाते हैं।

10. Question words: whom, who, whose, what, when, where, which, how, why, etc का प्रयोग जब Direct Questions में किया जाता है, तब इन्हें Question words कहते हैं। इन वाक्यों में who, what, where और how Question words हैं।

- Who is your father?
- What is he?
- Where will you go?
- How do you do?

चूँकि ये **Question words Morphemes** के प्रभाव से मुक्त हैं, अतः इन्हें **Structure Words** के अंतर्गत रखा गया है।

Note: जब **who, what, when, why where, etc.** Indirect Speech में इस प्रकार प्रयुक्त रहते हैं, तब इन्हें **Subordinators** कहा जाता है क्योंकि ऐसी स्थिति में इनसे **Subordinate Clauses** के शुरू होने का संकेत मिलता है -

- Do you know where he lives?

Some Special Notes on Form Classes & Structure Words:

English words को **Morphemes** के आधार पर दो वर्गों में बाँटा गया है। इस वर्गीकरण के पीछे एक महत्वपूर्ण तथ्य है, जिसे जानना आपके लिए आवश्यक है। विभिन्न वाक्यों को गौर से देखने पर आप पाएँगे कि **Form Classes** के अंतर्गत जो भी शब्द आते हैं, वे **Basic Sentences** बनाने में प्रयुक्त होते हैं, जैसे

1. Cows eat grass.
2. Ram drank milk.
3. Birds look beautiful.
4. Horses run fast.

पुनः सिर्फ **Form Classes** की सहायता से अनेक ऐसे वाक्य बनते हैं, जो संकुचित अर्थ रखते हैं तथा अनेक परिस्थितियों में अस्पष्ट अर्थ देते हैं, जैसे

Guard watches carefully.

सावधानीपूर्वक पहरा देता है।

Write in Your Mother Tongue

अगर हम **guard** को **Verb** मानते हैं, तो वाक्य का अर्थ होगा – घड़ियों की सावधानीपूर्वक रखवाली करो। स्पष्टतः अभीष्ट वाक्य **ambiguous** अर्थ रखते हैं।

अब सवाल यह उठता है कि **Basic Sentences** को कैसे **expand** किया जाए. संकुचित तथा **ambiguous** अर्थवाले वाक्यों को स्पष्ट अर्थवाले वाक्यों में कैसे परिवर्तित किया जाए। इन सभी का एक ही समाधान है और वह है **Structure Words** का प्रयोग आप देखेंगे कि **Structure Words Form Classes** के पहले प्रयुक्त होकर वाक्य के **structure** को संतुलित करते हैं, जिससे वाक्य के अर्थ को नया आयाम मिलता है और हम भाषा की अभिव्यक्ति को **desirable shape/ meaning** दे पाते हैं। जैसे, ऊपर लिखे **sentences** को इस प्रकार **expand** कर सकते हैं -

1. Cows eat green grass.
2. Ram drank some milk.
3. Most of the birds look very beautiful.
4. Horses run very fast.

पुनः **ambiguous** अर्थवाले वाक्यों को **Structure Words** की सहायता से स्पष्ट अर्थवाले वाक्यों में बदल सकते हैं। जैसे

- The guard watches carefully.
- Guard the watches carefully.

यहाँ **the** प्रयुक्त होने से **ambiguity** समाप्त हो गया है। अब हम स्पष्ट रूप से कह सकते हैं कि पहले वाक्य में **guard Noun** है और **watches Verb**। दूसरे वाक्य में **guard Verb** है और **watches Noun**.

इस प्रकार शब्दों का नया वर्गीकरण भाषा-विज्ञान को ठोस रूप देने का प्रयास है।

Exercises Worked Out

1. Pick out the determiner, intensifier, sentence connector and subordinator in the following sentences.

- (a) The man was very tired.
- (b) My father is ill, therefore, I cannot go to school today.
- (c) I have no pen.

(d) Some boys of this school are very good singers.

(e) A king had three wives.

(f) Wait till I return.

(g) All that he said was not wrong.

(h) it is quite wrong.

Answers:

(a) Determiner --- the (d) Determiner --- some, this

(b) Determiner --- very (e) Determiner --- a, three

Sentence (f) Subordinator --- till

Connector --- therefore (g) Subordinator --- that

(c) Determiner --- no (h) Intensifier --- quite

2. Pick out the pronoun, determiner, subordinator and question word in the following sentences---

(a) Each boy had a pen.

(b) Each of them had some milk.

(c) Some of you can't do this.

(d) some boys can't do this.

(e) All the boys are absent.

(f) All that he wanted to do ended well.

(g) That book is not mine.

(h) That is a foolish question.

Answers:

(a) Determiner --- each, a (e) Determiner --- all, the

(b) Pronoun --- each, them (f) Pronoun --- all

(c) Pronoun --- some, this, (g) Determiner --- that

(d) Pronoun --- this Pronoun --- mine

Determiner --- some (h) Pronoun --- that

3. Fill in the blanks with appropriate determiners, intensifiers and subordinators---

- (a) She has milk.
- (b) Cow is Animal.
- (c) He is Good.
- (d) The news is good to be true.
- (e) He went to a club he had no company.
- (f) She gave the beggar flour.
- (g) This is the book I found yesterday.

Answers: (a) some, (b) the, an, (c) very, (d) too, (e) because, (f) a little, (g) which

Exercises - 1

Pick out the determiner, intensifier, sentence connector and subordinator in the following sentences---

1. The boy had a pen in his pocket.
2. This boy is very poor.
3. He has a little patience, therefore, he cannot get success.
4. Each boy will get enough sweets.
5. Whose answer is quite right?
6. You will be punished because you are late.
7. Some boys said that they would do.
8. Though he is poor, he is honest.
9. I have no money, so I shall buy nothing.
10. Gavaskar was a very good player. He played well, therefore, he got many medals.

Exercises - 2

Pick out the pronoun, determiner, subordinator and question word in the following sentences ---

1. This book is very interesting.
2. This is an interesting book.
3. Some are gentle.
4. Some cows are gentle.
5. Many of them were killed.
6. Many boys are absent today.
7. All are foolish.
8. All the boys are ready to go.
9. What is this?
10. What work will you do?

Write in Your Mother Tongue

FLUENT SPOKEN ENGLISH GRAMMAR

The Sentences

मनुष्य अपने विचारों (Ideas / Thoughts / Imaginations / Opinions / Feelings) की स्पष्ट अभिव्यक्ति (Clear Expression) बोलकर या लिखकर बहुधा (Mostly) शब्द-समूह (Group of words) के माध्यम से ही करता है। ऐसे Group of Words एक निश्चित क्रम (Definite Order) में Arrange किए जाते हैं और इनसे पूर्ण और सार्थक अर्थ (Complete and Meaningful Sense) की अभिव्यक्ति होती है। शब्दों का ऐसा समूह ही Sentence: कहलाता है।

A sentence is an arrangement of a group of words that makes a complete and meaningful sense.

निम्नलिखित Group of Words को देखें : The please shut door.

The moves earth the sun round.

ऊपर दिए गए Group of words sentence नहीं कहे जा सकते, क्योंकि ये Definite Order में Arrange नहीं किए गए हैं और न इनसे कोई अर्थ निकलता है। अब ऊपर दिए गए Group of Words को Arrange कर देखें :

- Please shut the door.
- The earth moves round the sun.

ऊपर लिखित Group of Words Sentence कहे जायेंगे, क्योंकि इन्हें Definite Order में Arrange किया गया है और इनसे Complete and Meaningful Sense (पूर्ण और सार्थक अर्थ) की अभिव्यक्ति होती है। निम्नलिखित Group of Words को देखें:

Which I like most Because you are late

ऊपर दिए गए Group of words, Complete Sense नहीं देते हैं इसलिए इन्हें Sentence नहीं कहा जा सकता।

निम्नलिखित Sentences को ध्यान से समझें

- I was born five hundred years ago.
- Two and two is five.

ऊपर दिए गए वाक्य Complete Sense तो देते हैं, लेकिन इनसे कोई Meaningful Sense नहीं निकलता है, इसलिए ये Sentence नहीं कहे जा सकते।

Kind of Sentences

Sentences पाँच प्रकार के होते हैं। ये हैं:

(A) Assertive/Statement/Declarative

(B) Interrogative

(C) Imperative

(D) Optative

(E) Exclamatory

(A) Assertive/Statement/Declarative Sentences : जब हमें किसी तथ्य (Fact) को दावे के साथ या दृढ़तापूर्वक स्वीकार करने की आवश्यकता होती है या किसी घटना (Event) या वस्तु को वर्णन (Describe) करने की आवश्यकता होती है, चाहे वह स्वीकारात्मक (Affirmative) हो या नकारात्मक (Negative), हम **Assertive Sentence** का प्रयोग करते हैं।

When we need to give some facts or to describe events or things whether negative or positive, we use assertive sentences. An assertive sentence makes only a statement, an assertion (दृढ़ कथन, निश्चित घोषणा, दावा) and ends with a full stop.

नीचे अंग्रेजी के **sentences** के कुछ **structures** (बनावट) के सूत्र दिए गए हैं

Structures : (i) S+V+O/C

(ii) S+ V¹/V5+O/C

(iii) S+ is/are/am + V + O/C

(iv) S+ have / has + V³ +O/C

(v) S+ have/has + been + V + O/C

(vi) S + V² +O/C

(vii) S+ modal + V¹

(viii) S+ modal + be + V^a

(ix) S+ modal + have + V³

(x) S+ modal + have been + V

(ET, S=Subject, V = Verb, O = Object, C = Complement)

Examples: Affirmative or Yes-statement: Abhishek has done his M.B.B.S. from Kolkata.

- Guddu went to Delhi yesterday. She may win the prize.
- Chandan may be coming now.
- I am sure you too will begin to speak English. You should have applied for this post earlier.
- He could have passed the examination if he had laboured hard.

Examples: Negative or No-Statement Negative Statement प्रायः first auxiliary verb के बाद Not

जैसे :-

- Abha has not been reading the newspaper.
- Komal is not living in Patna these days.

रखने से बनता है, लेकिन कुछ Negative words ऐसे हैं जिनके प्रयोग से Sentences अपने आप Negative

बन जाते हैं और Not का प्रयोग नहीं करना पड़ता है, जैसे They never come in time. (वे कभी भी समय पर नहीं आते हैं।)

- Hardly go there. (मैं वहाँ बिल्कुल नहीं जाता हूँ।)
- Barking dogs seldom bite. (भौकने वाले कुत्ते काटते नहीं।)

ऊपर के Sentences में Red words Negative words हैं जिनके प्रयोग से ये Sentences Negative बन गये हैं तथा अलग से Not का प्रयोग नहीं करना पड़ा है।

किसी Noun के पहले Negative word 'No' का प्रयोग करने से Sentence बन जाता है; जैसे

- I have no money. He has no patience.
- There is no possibility of his arrival.

(B) Interrogative Sentences:

जब हमें किसी से कोई प्रश्न करने की आवश्यकता होती है, तो हम Interrogative Sentences का प्रयोग करते हैं। When we need to ask someone a question, we use an interrogative sentence.

It ends with a mark of interrogation (?).

Interrogative Sentences दो प्रकार के होते हैं

(i) Yes / No-questions,

(ii) Wh-questions. (i) Yes / No-questions: Yes / No-question form करने के लिए **Auxiliary**

Verb को Subject के पहले रखना पड़ता है। हम जानते हैं कि English language में 24 Auxiliary Verbs हैं; ये हैं-is, am, are, was, were, have, has, had, do, does, did, shall, will, should, would, can, could, may, might, must, ought to, used to, need 37 dare.

Examples: Yes /No-questions:

Structures: Auxiliary Verb + Subject+ Main Verb + Other words?

- Do you read any newspaper?
- Does he smoke ?
- Is that your pen?
- Will he pass the examination ?
- Can you speak English fluently?
- Should there be peace every where?

(ii) Wh-questions: In root there are nine basic question words.

ये question words इस प्रकार हैं

(1) Who (Pronoun) for person (to find out subject or object) , fortust

(2) Whom (Pronoun) for person (to find out object)

(3) Whose (Pronoun/Adjective): for possession (to find out subject or object) किसका

(4) What (Pronoun/Adjective) for things (to find out subject or object)
क्या, कौन सा

(5) Which (Pronoun/Adjective) for persons or things when choice is restricted (to findout subject or object) –

(6) Where (Adverb) for place-

(7) When (Adverb) for time

(8) Why (Adverb) for reason-IT

(9) How (Adverb/Adjective) for method, health, way
Nine basic question words Formative Question Words ;

जैसे

(1) How many for number-fa

(2) How much for quantity-fall

(3) How far: for distance-/fendaftar

(4) How long for duration-crafer

(5) How often for frequency-for-fare

(6) How many times for frequency-foftar

(7) At what time for exact time-f44

(8) At what place for exact place-f – किस जगह निम्नलिखित Points को ध्यान में रखें

(1) जब हमें Subject पता लगाने की आवश्यकता होती है, तो word को पहले रखना चाहिए और इसका Structure होगा हमें सम्बन्धित question

Structure: Question Word+ Verb + Other words?

Examples: Who discovered the laws of motion ?

Who invented the television?

Whose/which horse won the race?

What happened?

Who is the Prime Minister of India ?

Who is popularly known as Bapu ?

Which horse arrived first?

(2) जब हमें Object पता लगाने की आवश्यकता होती है, तो हमें सम्बन्धित question word को पहले रखना चाहिए और इसका Structure होगा Structure: Question Word+ Auxiliary Verb + Subject +Main Verb + Other words?

Examples: What did they eat?

- What paper do you read?
- Which hand do you use?
- Which of these dates would you prefer?
- Who are you looking for?/For whom are you looking? Who are you talking to ?/To whom are you talking?
- Who did you go with ?/With whom did you go?
- Which address did you send it to ? or
- To which address did you send it?
- What do you base your theory on? or,
- On what do you base your theory?

ध्यान दें: Formal English में हम Preposition Concerned Question word का प्रयोग करते हैं, लेकिन Ordinary English में हम सामान्यतः Preposition का प्रयोग Sentence के अंत में करते हैं। इससे Sentence के Meaning में कोई अंतर नहीं पड़ता है केवल Structure में थोड़ा अंतर हो जाता है।

(3) Where का प्रयोग Place / Position/Direction पता लगाने के लिए किया जाता है।

Examples: Where do you live? Where is she living these

Where is your residence ?

Where is the capital of India?

(4) When का प्रयोग Time पता लगाने के लिए किया जाता है।

Examples: When do you get up?

When do you have your breakfast?

When does his birthday fall?

When was Dr. Rajendra Prasad born?

(5) Why का प्रयोग Reason (कारण) पता लगाने के लिए किया जाता है।

Examples: Why was he late?

Why are you angry?

Why is the government job your first choice?

पता लगाने के लिए किया जाता है।

(6) **How** का **Examples:**

प्रयोग **Method / Health / Way** How do you start the car ?

How are you?

How did he come here?

(7) **How** का प्रयोग **Adjectives** के साथ इस प्रकार किया जाता है.

Examples:

How old are you?

How important is this (**In what way** है।)

How strong is he?

(8) **How** का **Examples:**

प्रयोग **Much** और **Many** के साथ इस प्रकार किया जाता है... **How much (money) do you want? How many (books) do you need ?** किया जाता है.

(9) **How** का प्रयोग **Adverb** के साथ इस प्रकार

Examples: How fast does he run ?

How soon can you remember?

How seriously was he hurt?

Examples with Formative Question Words:

(i) How many is used to find out Number (T)

Examples: How many languages can you speak?

How many brothers and sisters do you have?

How many seats are there in the lower house of the Indian Parliament?

(ii) How much is used to find out Quantity (FTTETT)

Examples: How much water should a man drink every day?

How much time does it take to fly to Delhi?

How much milk can you drink at a time?

(iii) How far is used to find out Distance (ft)

Examples: How far is Washington from Delhi?

How far is your residence from here?

How far do you understand me?

(iv) How long is used to find out Duration (3rafer)

Examples: How long have you been living in Patna?

How long are you going to stay here?

How long will you take to complete this work?

(v) How often/How many times is used to find out Frequency

Examples: How often have you been to America?

How many times do you eat every day?

How often do you take tea every day?

How many times have you visited the Taj?

(vi) What kind of/What type of/What sort of is used to find out variety

(प्रकार/किस्म)

Examples: What kind of movie do you mostly watch?

What type of person do you like most?

What sort of business does your father run?

(C) Imperative Sentences :

जब हमें कोई आदेश (Order), आग्रह (Request) और सलाह (Advice) निषेध (Prohibition) का भाव व्यक्त करने की आवश्यकता होती है, तो हम Imperative Sentence का प्रयोग करते हैं।

When we need to express some command, request and advice, we use imperative sentences.

Examples:

Come on/in time.

Help the poor

(Order)

(Advice)

(Prohibition)

Don't pluck the flowers. Have a cup of tea, please

Please, lend me fifty rupees.

Never tell a lie.

(Request) (Request)

(Advice)

ध्यान दे। Imperative Sentences में Subject "You understood (remains hidden but is implied) रहता है। यानी Subject 'You' अव्यक्त लेकिन उसका भाव निहित रहता है।

Come in time - You come in time.

Help the poor You help the poor.

कभी-कभी Imperative Sentence एक ही शब्द का होता है, जैसे

Run! Hurry! Catch ! Come! Go!

ऐसे शब्दों से Strong Command/Order (सख्त आदेश) की अभिव्यक्ति होती है तथा ऐसे Imperative Sentences के अन्त में Note of Exclamation (!) का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

(D) Optative Sentences:

जब हमें किसी व्यक्ति के प्रति शुभकामना (Wish), प्रार्थना / दुआ (Prayer) या अभिशाप / बददुआ (Curse) व्यक्त करने की आवश्यकता होती है तो हम Optative Sentences का प्रयोग करते हैं।

When we need to express a wish/prayer/curse to some one, we use optative sentences.

Examples: Wish you a happy new year !/I wish you a happy new year !

May you be successful!

Many many happy returns of the day ! (यह दिन बार-बार आए)

May you live long!

Would that he were alive (काश ! वह जिन्दा होता !)

May that building collapse (वह भवन ढह जाय !) दे Optative Sentences के अन्त में Note of Exclamation (!) का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

'May' का प्रयोग **Interrogative** तथा **Optative** दोनों प्रकार के **sentences** में किया जा सकता है। 'May' का प्रयोग **Interrogative Sentences** में आज्ञा (**Permission**) का भाव व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है और **sentences**

के अन्त में **Question Mark (?)** का प्रयोग किया जाता है। 'May' का प्रयोग **Optative Sentences** में **Wish / Prayer** का भाव व्यक्त करने के लिए किया जाता है और ऐसे **Sentences** के अंत में **Note of Exclamation (!)** का प्रयोग किया जाता है।

नीचे दिए गए **examples** को समझकर अपना **concept clear** करें **May I use your pen?**

May success kiss your feet!

(**Interrogative Sentence**) (**Optative Sentence**)

(E) Exclamatory Sentences:

जब हमें आश्चर्य (**Surprise**), दुःख (**Sorrow**), हर्ष (**Joy**), क्रोध (**Anger**), पश्चाताप (**Regret**), घृणा (**Contempt**), दुश्मनी (**Hatred**) इत्यादि का भाव व्यक्त करने की आवश्यकता होती है तो हम **Exclamatory Sentences** का प्रयोग करते हैं। **When we need to express some strong and sudden feeling of surprise, sorrow, joy, anger, regret, contempt, hatred etc. we use exclamatory sentences**

How + Adjective What + Adjective + Noun

सामान्यतः **Exclamatory Sentences 'What'** या **'How'** से शुरू किए जाते हैं। यद्यपि कि ऐसा नितांत आवश्यक नहीं है। मुख्य बात यह है कि **Sentences में Tone of Exclamation Expression**

Examples:

(**Surprise**) **What a boy! How beautiful!**

(**Joy**) **What a dashing personality! How careful you are!**

(**Surprise/Joy**)

Alas! I am undone.

Hurrah! we have won the match.

(**Surprise**)

(**Sorrow**) (**Joy**)

Pooh! Pooh!!

(Contempt) (Regret)

(Contempt)

What a tragic end! How bad!

(Anger)

How dare you!

ध्यान दें **Note of Exclamation** का प्रयोग **exclamatory word** के अन्त में या **(exclamatory) sentence** के अन्त में किया जाता है।

Exercises - 3

Rearrange the following group of words in a definite/proper order so as to make meaningful sentences

1. Has memory he good a
2. Is going drink Salu to milk.
3. Will the plants gardener be the watering.
4. India of the Delhi is capital.
5. Is any of thing excess bad.
6. Brother for your is you looking.
7. Here are standing why you?
8. Mother necessity of invention is the.
9. Our determines way thinking of the path follow will we.
10. The earth satisfy need provides enough to every one's.

Exercises - 4

Identify the following sentences whether they are Assertive/Interrogative/ Imperative/Optative/Exclamatory

1. I am sure you too will begin to speak English
- 2 Do you know how to swim?
3. How beautifully she writes!
4. I hardly talk to him.

5. What a simple girl she is t
6. May God you
7. They have not finished the work yet.
8. Post these letters before 4 p.m.
9. Kindly help me.
10. All the best.
11. Will you please show me the way to the station?
12. Never cheat your friend. 13. May there be peace everywhere!
14. Happy new year to you! 15. O God! Save us.
16. May it never happen!
17. May you never be in any trouble! 18 You stupid boy ! Why did you break the window?
- 19 Whose name is Chiku in this class ?
20. What kind of plant is this?

Write in Your Mother Tongue

<p>FLUENT IN ORAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR</p>

The Verb

The Verb is a word used to express some action (), feeling (अनुभव / बोध / चेतना) or existence (स्थिति / अस्तित्व). It tells us something about the subject in a sentence.

Examples:

2. English Language में Verbs को दो Major classes में बाँटा गया है— (i) Main / Principal / Full / Ordinary / Lexical Verbs (ii) Auxiliary / Helping Verbs.

3. Main Verbs की संख्या unlimited (असीमित) है। इनके पाँच रूप (five forms) होते हैं। इन्हें five forms के साथ निम्नलिखित प्रकार से Conjugate (क्रिया पद के रूप को दर्शाना) किया जा सकता है-

4. Main Verbs दो प्रकार के होते हैं

(1) Finite Verbs

(ii) Non-finite / Infinitive Verbs

(I) Finite Verbs : 'Finite' का अर्थ होता है Limited (सीमित) यानी Finite Verb वह है जो Subject के Number (वचन) और Person (पुरुष) और Tense (काल) के अनुसार अपने को Limited या Restricted रखता है। दूसरे शब्दों में हम कह सकते हैं कि Finite Verb अपने Subject के Number, Person और Tense के साथ Change कर जाता है या अपने Subject के Number, Person और Tense के साथ agree करता है। A finite verb is that which is limited to the number, person and tense of its subject. A finite verb is that which changes its form according to the number, person and tense of its subject. A finite verb is that which agrees with the number, person and tense of its subject.

Examples:

I am a teacher.

He is a student.

You are singers

They are players.

ऊपर दिए गए Sentences में 'am', और 'verbs' हैं, क्योंकि वे Verbs अपने Subjects के

Number और **Person** के साथ **limited** हैं। दूसरी भाषा में हम कह सकते हैं कि ये **Verbs** अपने **Subjects** के **Number** और के अनुसार अपने **form** को **Change** कर देते हैं या अपने **Subjects** के **Number** और के साथ करते हैं।

अब नीचे दिए गए Sentences को देखें He lives in Delhi

I live in Mumbai. They live in Delhi.

ऊपर दिए गए **Sentences** में 'live' एक **finite Verb** है; क्योंकि यह अपने **Subject** के **Number** और **Person** के साथ **agree** करता है। इसीलिए **Subject he** के साथ इसमें 5 जोड़ा गया है, जबकि **Subjects 'I'** तथा **'They'** के साथ **'S'** नहीं जोड़ा गया है।

(ii) **Non-finite Verbs: Non-finite Verb Subject Number of Person Limited Restricted from far Subject Number, Person tense** अनुसार अपने **form** को **change** नहीं करता हो या उसके साथ **agree** नहीं करता हो। **A non-finite Verb is that which is not limited to the number, person and tense of its subject. A non-finite Verb is that which does not change its form according to the number, person and tense of its subject.**

A non-finite verb is that which does not agree with the number, person and tense of its subject. को देखें

Examples: निम्नलिखित **Sentences**

(a) **I want to learn English.**

He wants to learn English.

They want to learn English

ऊपर के **Sentences** में 'want', 'wants' और 'want' **finite verbs** है जबकि **to learn** **non-finite Verb** 1 **to learn non-finite verb** **afan kadif Subject** के **Number** और **Person** के साथ **agree** नहीं करता है यानी **different subjects (I, He and They)** के साथ इसका **same form (to learn)** ही रहता है। इसे **(to learn को) Infinitive** कहते हैं।

निम्नलिखित **Sentences** को देखें। (b) **I love a blooming flower. He loves a blooming flower. They love a blooming flower. 'love', 'loves' shr 'love'** **finite Verbs** **af blooming non-finite Verb** 1 **blooming non-finite Verbrafer** , or **Subject** के **Number** और **Person** के साथ **agree** नहीं करता है यानी **different**

subjects (I, He and They) के साथ इसका same form (blooming) ही रहता है।
इसे (blooming को) Participle कहते हैं।

पुनः निम्नलिखित Sentences को देखें: (c) 'I like' singing

He likes' singing

They 'like' singing.

ऊपर के Sentences में 'like', 'likes' और 'like' finite verbs हैं जबकि singing non-finite verb है। singing non-finite verb इसलिए है क्योंकि यह अपने subject के Number और Person के साथ agree नहीं करता है यानी different subjects (I, He and They) के साथ इसका same form (singing) ही रहता है। इसे (singing को) Gerund कहते हैं।

इस प्रकार non-finite verbs तीन प्रकार के होते हैं जिन्हें (i) Infinitive (ii) Participle और (iii) Gerund कहा जाता है।

5. Finite Verbs को दो वर्गों (Classes) में बाँटा गया है (i) Transitive Verb (सकर्मक क्रिया) - That which requires an object. (ii) Intransitive Verb (अकर्मक क्रिया)

That which requires no object.

(i) Transitive Verb :

निम्नलिखित Sentences को देखें

Rani sang a song.

He wrote a letter.

Chiku likes sweets.

ऊपर के तीनों Sentences में तीन अलग-अलग Verbs क्रमशः sang, wrote और likes का प्रयोग किया गया है। इन Verbs के द्वारा denoted action का फल (fruit of the action) केवल Subjects Rani, He और Chiku पर ही नहीं पड़ता, बल्कि अन्य शब्द song, letter और sweets पर भी पड़ता है यानी Verbs द्वारा denoted action Doer या subject को तो प्रभावित करते ही हैं साथ ही साथ Objects song, letter और sweets को भी प्रभावित करते हैं, अतः sang wrote तथा likes Transitive Verbs है।

A transitive Verb is a Verb that denotes an action that passes over from a doer or subject to an object.

(ii) Intransitive Verb :

अब निम्नलिखित Sentences को देखें Guddu laughs:

Dogs bark.

Birds fly

ऊपर के तीनों Sentences में तीन अलग-अलग verbs क्रमशः laughs, bark और fly का प्रयोग किया गया है। इन Verbs के द्वारा denoted action का फल Subject से ही आरम्भ होता है और उसी Subject पर पड़कर समाप्त हो जाता है। अतः laughs, bark और fly Intransitive Verbs हैं।

An Intransitive Verb is a verb that denotes an action which does pass over to an object or that does not require an object.

अधिकांश Transitive Verbs के साथ केवल एक Object (A single Object) का प्रयोग होता है लेकिन कुछ ऐसे Transitive Verbs होते हैं जिन्हें दो Objects की आवश्यकता होती है, एक Object पर्याप्त नहीं होता है। give, ask, offer, promise, tell ऐसे अनेक ध्यान दें

सामान्यतः Sentence में पहले Indirect Object और उसके बाद Direct Object का प्रयोग होता है। यदि Indirect Object को Direct Object के बाद रखा जाता है, तो Indirect Object के पहले 'to' या 'for preposition' का प्रयोग किया जाता है, जैसे

(a) The teacher taught

Indirect Object

The teacher taught

(b) Khushi offered Khushi grammar

Write in Your Mother Tongue

Indirect Object

offered

(c) Pinky brought

or Direct Object

to Preposition

Indirect Object

a cup of coffee. or

Direct Object

a cup of coffee Direct Object Preposition Indirect Object

to

a glass of milk or, Direct Object

me.

me Indirect Object

Pinky brought a glass of milk for

Direct Object Preposition Indirect Object

7. कुछ ऐसे Verbs हैं जिनका प्रयोग Transitivity और Intransitivity दोनों प्रकार से होता है, जैसे Verbs Used Transitivity

- Boys fly kites.
- The driver stopped the train.
- Ring the bell, Mohan.
- Verbs Used Intransitivity
- Birds fly.
- The train stopped suddenly.
- The bell rang loudly.
- Karim ran a race.
- The horse ran fast. The fire burns dimly.
- Oil floats on water.
- He burnt his furniture.

- Children float paper boats.
- The storm sank the ship.
- The ship sank rapidly.
- Rana Pratap fought many battles.
- Rana Pratap fought bravely Abhishek spoke frankly.
- Abhishek spoke the truth.
- How do you feel?

8. कुछ **Intransitive Verbs** के साथ **Preposition** जोड़कर उन्हें **Transitive** बनाया जा सकता है, जैसे

I feel cold.

कभी-कभी **Preposition Verb** के पहले लगता है यानी **Preposition is prefixed to the verb; -**

- India must over come the terrorists.
- The river over flew its bank.
- They with drew the proposal.

कभी-कभी कुछ **Intransitive Verbs** के बाद ऐसे **Objects** का प्रयोग होता है जिनका अर्थ **Intransitive Verbs** में निहित होता है यानी **Objects** और **Verbs** के अर्थ में समानता होती है। ऐसे **Objects** को **Cognate Objects** या **Cognate Accusatives** कहा जाता है; जैसे **My grandfather lived a happy life.**

Ritika sang a melodious song.

Vineeta dreamt a strange dream

Islept a sound sleep.

They have fought a good fight.

ऊपर के **Sentences** को पढ़ने से पता चलता है कि **"a happy life", 'lived' Verb** का **Object** है। साथ-साथ यह भी पता चलता है कि **'life'** का अर्थ कुछ कुछ **lived' Verb** में निहित है। इसी प्रकार **'song'** का अर्थ **'sang' verb** में, **'dream'** का अर्थ **'dreamt Verb** में, **'sleep'** का अर्थ **'slept' Verb** में तथा **'fight'** का अर्थ **'fought' Verb** में निहित है। अतः जिस **Object** का अर्थ उसके पूर्ववाली क्रिया (**Previous Verb**) में निहित हो, उसे

अतः जिस **Object** का अर्थ उसके पूर्ववाली क्रिया (**Previous Verb**) में निहित हो, उसे **Cognate Object** या **Cognate Accusative** कहा जाता है।

9. Verbs of Incomplete Predication:

ऐसे **Verbs** जो अपने आप में पूरा अर्थ (**complete sense**) नहीं प्रकट करते यानी जिनके **object** के आगे कोई शब्द देने की आवश्यकता होती है, उन्हें **Verbs of Incomplete Predication** कहा जाता है। जो शब्द या शब्द समूह (**word or group of words**) **object** के बाद रखा जाता है उसे **complement** कहा जाता है। **Verbs of Incomplete Predication** से प्रायः **being becoming, seeming appearing** (होना, लगना, प्रतीत होना) इत्यादि का भाव व्यक्त होता है।

Such Verbs which do not make complete sense by themselves are called Verbs of Incomplete Predication. They require complements to complete their sense. They usually express the idea of being, becoming, seeming, appearing etc.

Write in Your Mother Tongue

FLUENT SPOKEN ENGLISH GRAMMAR

ऊपर के Sentences में प्रयुक्त Verbs Transitive हैं। इन Sentences को ध्यान से पढ़ने से यह स्पष्ट होता है कि कुछ Transitive Verbs ऐसे होते हैं जिनके आगे केवल एक Object देने से Sentence का Meaning Complete नहीं होता है, Object के आगे कोई शब्द देने की आवश्यकता होती है। मान लिया जाय कि first sentence में केवल यही लिखा जाता- We made him तो इसका जो अर्थ हम व्यक्त करना चाहते हैं वह पूरा नहीं होता किन्तु him के बाद 'Captain' लिख देने से Sentence suitable अर्थ प्रकट करता है। इस प्रकार के Complement जो Object के बाद लिखे जाते हैं Objective Complement कहनाते है। Objective Complement कई रूपों (Forms) में हो सकते हैं। ऊपर के Sentences में 'Nature of Complement' पर ध्यान देने से यह स्पष्ट होता है।

ध्यान दें

Important Transitive Verbs of Incomplete Predication & Appoint, Believe, Call, Create, Elect, Find, Make, Suppose, Think, Wish Name etc.

Write in Your Mother Tongue

FLUENT SPOKEN ENGLISH GRAMMAR

ऊपर के Sentences में प्रयुक्त Verbs Intransitive हैं। इन Sentences को ध्यान से पढ़ने से यह स्पष्ट होता है कि कुछ Intransitive Verbs ऐसे होते हैं जिनके आगे बिना कोई दूसरा शब्द दिए Sentence का Meaning Complete नहीं होता है। जैसे—मान लिया जाय कि first sentence में केवल वही लिखा जाता "He is" तो इसका जो अर्थ हम व्यक्त करना चाहते हैं वह पूरा नहीं होता, किन्तु is के बाद 'doctor' लिख देने से Sentence suitable अर्थ प्रकट करता है। इस प्रकार Intransitive Verb के आगे अर्थ को पूरा करने के लिए जो शब्द प्रयुक्त होते हैं, वे Complement to Intransitive Verb कहलाते हैं और Verb Intransitive Verb of Incomplete Predication कहलाता है। चूंकि ऐसे Complements का सम्बन्ध केवल Subject से रहता है, अतः ये Subjective Complement कहलाते हैं। Subjective Complement या Intransitive Verb के Complement कई रूपों (Forms) में हो सकते हैं। ऊपर के Sentences में Nature of the Complement पर ध्यान देने से यह स्पष्ट होता है।

ध्यान दें :- Important Intransitive Verbs of Incomplete Predication है-Be (is, are, am, was, were), Seem, Become, Look, Appear, Grow, Taste, Turn, Go etc. में क्या भेद है भली आवश्यक सुझाव विद्यार्थियों को Object और Complement भाँति समझ लेना चाहिए।

Main Points to Remember

(i) A Subjective Complement' qualifies the subject. It comes after some Intransitive Verbs. An 'Objective Complement qualifies an object. It comes after some Transitive Verbs.

(ii) एक ही शब्द एक वाक्य में Subjective Complement और दूसरे वाक्य में Objective Complement #1 I-am angry angry Subjective Complement *He made me angry angry objective complement

Linking and Non-linking Verbs Linking Verb और Non-linking Verb एक विशेष प्रकार के connection या disconnection (सम्बन्ध या अलगाव) को व्यक्त करते हैं। जैसा कि इनके नाम से ही स्पष्ट Links Connection. To link to connect. Linking that which connects. Non-linking that which does not connect - समझने के लिए नीचे दिए गए Examples को ध्यान देकर पढ़ें:

(1) Column A में प्रयुक्त Verbs (fell, sings, is और are) के बाद Subjective Complement का प्रयोग हुआ है। Subjective Complement क्या है, इसे हम article 13 में समझ चुके हैं।

(ii) Column B में प्रयुक्त Verbs के बाद उनके objects हैं।

(iii) Column A में प्रयुक्त Verbs का Connection केवल उनके Subjects से हैं। दूसरी भाषा में हम कह सकते हैं कि ये Verbs केवल अपने पूर्ववर्ती Subjects से ही Linked/ Connected है या ये केवल Subjects को ही प्रभावित करते हैं। अतः ये Linking Verbs है।

(iv) Column B में प्रयुक्त Verbs का Connection केवल Subjects से ही नहीं है, बल्कि Verb के बाद प्रयुक्त व्यक्ति या वस्तु से भी है ये Verbs एक से अधिक प्रकार के व्यक्ति या वस्तु को प्रभावित करते हैं। अतः ये Non-linking Verbs कहलाते हैं।

(v) संक्षेप में हम कह सकते हैं कि The verbs that act as link between their subjects and the subjective complements are called Linking Verbs e.g. Is, Am, Are, Was, Were, Appear, Become, Fall, Feel, Grow, Look, Seem, Smell, Remain, Taste, Own, Contain, etc.

The verbs that are not only connected with their subjects but also with the persons or things used after them are called Non-linking Verbs

(vi) एक ही Verb अपने प्रयोग के अनुसार Linking या Non-linking हो सकता है। (vii) नीचे Linking Verbs के कुछ और Examples दिए जा रहे हैं। इन्हें ध्यान से पढ़कर अपना Concept Clear कर लें

Stative and Dynamic Verbs

Modern English Grammar में वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Transitive या Intransitive Verbs को उनके अर्थ के अनुसार दो भागों में बाँटा गया है-

(i) Stative Verbs और (ii) Dynamic Verbs.

(i) Stative Verbs

निम्नलिखित sentences पर ध्यान दें

We see with our eyes.

I believe in God.

We hear with our ears. He knows English.

This flat consists of three rooms.

Radha loves Krishna.

ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों में Verbs (जिन्हें red letters में दिया गया है) से fixed, अर्थात् दृढ़, स्थिर, खास, निश्चित स्थिति (Certain state or steady condition), स्थायी कार्य व्यापार (Permanent Activity) का बोध होता है। इस प्रकार के Verbs, Verbs in Action नहीं हैं यानी ये ऐसे Verbs हैं जो Progressive या गतिशील नहीं हो सकते हैं। यही कारण है कि इस प्रकार के Verbs का सामान्य अर्थ में Progressive/Imperfect Tense नहीं होता है। ऐसे Verbs का संचालन हम अपने शरीर के अंगों या इन्द्रियों (जैसे—आँख, कान, नाक, जीभ, हृदय इत्यादि) के द्वारा प्राप्त प्रत्यक्ष ज्ञान के आधार पर करते हैं। इसे Perception या Cognition कहा जाता है। Perception की सहायता से ज्ञान / अनुभव प्राप्त करने के लिए कोई प्रयास/ इच्छा (Effort or Desire) नहीं की जाती। जब कोई वस्तु आँख के सामने आ जाती है, तब हम बिना प्रयास या इच्छा के भी उसे देख लेते हैं। जब कोई गायक गाता है, तब बिना प्रयास या इच्छा के भी उसकी ध्वनि सुन लेते हैं। इस प्रकार ज्ञान / अनुभव की प्राप्ति सहज, स्वाभाविक रूप से हो जाती है। ऐसे कार्यों के लिए Stative Verb का प्रयोग होता है। The verbs which denote permanent activities, a certain state or steady condition in the person or thing mentioned in the subject are called Stative Verbs अर्थ के दृष्टिकोण से Stative Verbs का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित प्रकार के कार्यों के लिए किया जाता है

(A) Verbs of Perception/Cognition Perception की सहायता से प्राप्त ज्ञान /

/ अनुभव एक Automatic action है। इस प्रकार के Action (कार्य) को express करने के लिए Stative Verbs का प्रयोग किया जाता है। ये Verbs हैं- See, Hear, Smell, Taste Feel इत्यादि

Examples: We smell with our nose.

We taste with our tongue. I feel that music is essential in life.

जब Verbs of Perception का प्रयोग Progressive Tense में होता है, तब इनसे अस्थायी कार्य (Temporary action) का बोध होता है, अर्थात् यह बोध होता है कि कार्य अभी हो रहा है, पर वह सदा नहीं होता, जैसे— He is tasting sweets. The Magistrate is hearing my case.

(B) Verbs of Permanent Mental States/Activities

स्थायी मानसिक अवस्था / कार्यकलाप (Permanent mental state/activity) को express करने के लिए भी Stative Verbs का प्रयोग किया जाता है। ये Verbs हैं— Agree, Believe, Consider, Doubt, Differ, Know, Forget, Remember, Recognise, Think, Understand इत्यादि ।

Examples: Believe in God. I think he is meritorious.

He knows English. He agrees with me.

ऐसी मानसिक अवस्थाएँ स्थायी होती हैं। इसलिए ऐसे Verbs का प्रयोग Progressive Tense में नहीं हो सकता। अतः हम इस प्रकार नहीं लिख सकते I am knowing English. I am believing in God.

(C) Emotional States.

स्थायी भावना (Emotion) को express करने के लिए Stative Verbs का प्रयोग किया जाता है। ये Verbs हैं- Love, Hate, Hope, Like, Dislike, Want, Wish, Desire इत्यादि ।

Examples: Sita loves Ram. I hate a dishonest person.

He dislikes spicy food.

ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों से स्थायी भावना का बोध होता है। प्रेम करना, घृणा करना या नापसंद करना इत्यादि स्थायी भावनाएँ हैं। ऐसे Verbs का प्रयोग Progressive Tense में नहीं करना ज्यादा उचित है।

(D) Static States:

कुछ कार्य व्यापार ऐसे हैं जो सदा स्थिर (static) या स्थायी रूप (steady condition) में पाये जाते हैं। ऐसे कार्यों को express करने के लिए भी Stative Verbs का प्रयोग किया जाता है। ये Verbs हैं- Seem, Live, Appear, Resemble, Own, Remain, Have, Possess, Deserve, Contain, Consist of, Belong to इत्यादि।

Examples: Sonal deserves praise. Raushan resembles his father.

Rani owns a building in Mumbai.

My flat consists of two rooms.

This book belongs to me.

इस प्रकार के Verbs का प्रयोग Progressive Tense में नहीं हो सकता है।

(ii) Dynamic Verbs निम्नलिखित Sentences

पर ध्यान दें

- Ruby writes a letter.
- He is reading a novel.
- Our soldiers are fighting bravely.

ऊपर दिए गए Sentences में Verbs (जिन्हें red letters में दिया गया है) से गतिशील परिवर्तनात्मक कार्य-व्यापार (Transitional actions) का बोध होता है। Dynamic का अर्थ होता है—गतिशील / परिवर्तनशील (Mobile/Transitional) ऐसे Verbs वास्तव में Verbs in Action हैं यानी ये Progressive या गतिशील हो सकते हैं। इसलिए Dynamic Verbs का प्रयोग वैसे कार्य व्यापार के लिए होता है जो अस्थायी (Temporary) या क्षणिक (Momentary)

या परिवर्तनशील (Transitional) होते हैं, अर्थात् जो कार्य व्यापार सदा नहीं होते। यही कारण है कि Dynamic Verbs का प्रयोग Progressive Tense में भी होता है।

The Verbs which denote a change in the person or thing mentioned in the subject are called Dynamic Verbs. अर्थ के दृष्टिकोण से Dynamic Verbs का प्रयोग निम्नलिखित प्रकार के कार्यों के लिए किया जाता है

(A) Temporary Activity अस्थायी कार्यों के लिए Dynamic Verbs का प्रयोग

Progressive Tense में इस प्रकार होता है Madhu is talking to Rajani

Rahul is living in Udaypur.

Satyajit is operating the computer.

(B) Bodily Sensation: शारीरिक संवेदना / उत्तेजना की अभिव्यक्ति के लिए Dynamic Verbs का प्रयोग इस प्रकार किया जा सकता है

His palms are itching.

(C) Momentary Activity : क्षणिक कार्य व्यापार की अभिव्यक्ति के लिए Dynamic Verbs का प्रयोग इस प्रकार होता है, जैसे

Nilam's teeth are aching My heart is fluttering. My thighs are quivering. It is drizzling.

The sun is rising.

The fog is disappearing. Ankur is remembering her lesson.

(D) Deliberate Activity / Voluntary Activity वैसे कार्य जो सोच-समझकर या इच्छापूर्वक किए जाएँ अर्थात् जिनसे Deliberate Activity (सुनियोजित कार्य-व्यापार) या Voluntary Activity (ऐच्छिक कार्य-व्यापार) का बोध हो, तो इनकी अभिव्यक्ति Dynamic Verbs के द्वारा इस प्रकार होती है

The doctor is feeling his pulse. Bittu is having a computer. He is seeing me tomorrow.

The judge is hearing the case.

She is smelling a rose.

Tinku is watching a movie.

ऊपर दिए गए sentences से यह पूरी तरह स्पष्ट है कि सारे कार्य शारीरिक अंगों या इन्द्रियों

(Bodily Organs) के द्वारा जान-बूझकर संचालित किए गए हैं, अर्थात् इनसे Deliberate/Voluntary Activity का भाव व्यक्त होता है।

ध्यान दे जब Stative Verbs का प्रयोग Progressive Tense में होता है, तब वे Dynamic बन जाते हैं और उनसे अस्थायी कार्य (Temporary Activities) का बोध होता है, जैसे

We hear with our ears. They are hearing me.

Lippi has a car. Lippi is having a car.

The milk tastes sweet.

Shubham is tasting the milk.

Dr. Rakesh lives in Yemen. Dr. Rakesh is living in Yemen

Permanent (Stative)

Temporary (Dynamic) Permanent (Stative)

Temporary (Dynamic)

Permanent (Stative)

Temporary (Dynamic)

Permanent (Stative) Temporary (Dynamic)

Auxiliary Verbs

1. Auxiliary or Helping Verbs are those that help the main verbs in the formation of tenses. As,

Aditi is eating rice.

They have written a letter.

Amritansh will play cricket..

'eat', 'write' a 'play' Main Verbs | First sentence में 'is', Main Verb 'eat' की Present continuous Tense के formation में सहायता

Second sentence 'have' Main Verb 'write' à Present Perfect Tense

formation de Third sentence 'will' Main Verb 'play' Simple Future Tense के formation में सहायता करता है। इसलिए 'is', 'have' और 'will' Auxiliary Verbs 1

Auxiliary Verbs की संख्या सीमित/निश्चित (Limited/Definite) है। मूलतः 12

Auxiliary Verbs हैं और इनका Expansion (विस्तार) 24 की संख्या तक होता है। नीचे दिए गए Table का अध्ययन कर अपना concept clear करें

Table

ऊपर दिए गए Table का अध्ययन करने से निम्नलिखित बातें पता चलती हैं. Auxiliary Verbs दो प्रकार के होते हैं :

(i) Primary Auxiliaries 37

(ii) Modal Auxiliaries.

(a) Primary Auxiliaries के अन्तर्गत आते हैं :

(i) Verb 'to be'

(ii) Verb 'to do'

(iii) Verb 'to have'

is, are, am, was 3* were do, does of did, have / has 3 had

(iv) जाता है, जैसे

'Do' का प्रयोग Imperative Sentence को Emphatic बनाने के लिए किया

Be careful. Do be careful. Come on time.

(Imperative)- ATENTA DELL

(Emphatic Imperative) (Imperative)- समय पर Do come on time. (Emphatic

Imperative पर अवश्य आओ। (v) Past Simple Tense के Negative के लिए all persons के साथ 'Did' का किया जाता है, जैसे He did not help me. I did not talk to him. They did not attend the party. You did not go there.

(vi) Past Simple Tense Interrogative for all persons à me "Did' का प्रयोग किया जाता है, जैसे Did I not support you ? Did you complete the home-work?

Did she pay the amount ?

Did he apply for the post ?

Did they join any party?

(vii) Past Simple Tense & Sentence Emphatic for 'Did' a प्रयोग किया जाता है, जैसे

I helped him.

I did help him.

They obliged me. They did oblige me.

(Non-emphatic) —

(Emphatic) मैंने उसकी अवश्य/निश्चित मदद की। (Non-emphatic) - gara fara

(Emphatic) –उनलोगों ने मुझे निश्चित रूप से अनुगृहीत किया।

इस Chapter में हम Auxiliary Verb का पहला प्रकार यानी Primary Auxilianes का अध्ययन विस्तारपूर्वक कर चुके हैं। अब next chapter में Auxiliary Verb का दूसरा प्रकार यानी Modal Auxiliaries का अध्ययन हम विस्तारपूर्वक करेंगे।

(A) Underline the Verbs in the following sentences. Two examples have been for your help

1. I am a student.
2. A child drinks milk.

Exercises - 5

Test yourself:

1. Ashoka was a great king
2. You are a teacher.
3. Shweta writes nicely.
4. Nikhil ate apples.
5. Who broke the chair?
6. There was a beggar.
7. How is your father?
8. I do my home-work regularly.
9. I am a student.
10. A child drinks milk.
11. He needs my help.
12. They have a house.
13. Vineeta went to Gaya.
14. She had a purse.
15. We were soldiers.

(B) Coniugate the following Full Verbs in their five forms-according to the example given below

Table

Test yourself:

to awake, to fight, to swim, to put, to choose, to forget, to fly, to win, to lie, to send, to wear, to throw, to write, to hang, to build, to hear, to kneel, to smell, to spend, to leave, to feed, to show, to have, to become, and to be.

(C) Some sentences are given below. Say whether the Verbs are finite or non-finite Take the help of given examples

We are players He was absent.

Mohan has to go.

He loves a singing bird I hate gambling.

1. Dasrath was a great king.
2. Farmers are poor.
3. The doctor is in his chamber.
4. Bobby and Anku were playing.
5. Goldu and Isha have apples.
6. What are you writing?
7. Rajneesh has gone to Meerut.
8. A barking dog seldom bites.
9. Kundan wants to play all day.
10. A barking dog seldom bites.
11. Kundan wants to play all day.
12. Kundan wants to play all day.

(are- finite (was-finite (has-finite, to go-non-finite (loves-tinite, singing-non-tinite (hate-finite gambling-non-finite

13. Mandavi has a beautiful daughter.

14. Manish is operating the computer.
15. He likes flying kites.
16. Ruby and Rambha have to go to Pune.
17. They have eaten many rasgullas.
18. The President is coming today.
19. I like walking early in the morning
20. India is a developing country.
21. They liked gardening.
22. You are requested to do this work.
23. Sunil is teaching English.

FLUENT SPOKEN ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Time & Tense

Difference between Time & Tense: Time और Tense दो भिन्न चीजें हैं। Time से हमारा तात्पर्य बीते हुए समय, वर्तमान समय और आनेवाले समय से है। सारे संसार में समय को भूत (past), वर्तमान (present) और भविष्य (future) से निर्देशित किया जाता है। इसका concept भाषा या व्याकरण से स्वतंत्र है। यह एक non-grammatical चीज है, जिसे मानव तब भी महसूस करता था जब वह कोई भाषा नहीं जानता था। इसके विपरीत Tense पूर्णतः एक grammatical चीज है। यह क्रिया के विभिन्न रूपों का अध्ययन है (Tense is the study of the forms of the verbs)। Tense का रूप तथा विवेचन प्रत्येक भाषा में भिन्न-भिन्न है, परंतु Time का concept सभी जगह एक ही है। I am buying a car next year (मैं अगले साल एक गाड़ी खरीद रहा हूँ) - इस वाक्य की क्रिया Present Tense में है, परंतु इससे Future Time का बोध हो रहा है। यहाँ ध्यान देनेवाली बात यह है कि क्रिया Present Tense में है, इसके बावजूद इससे Future Time का बोध हो रहा है। अगर Time और Tense दोनों एक ही चीज होते, तो Present Tense से सिर्फ Present Time का ही बोध होता, Future Time का नहीं। स्पष्टतः Time और Tense दो भिन्न चीजें हैं। Uses of the Tense: अब हम प्रत्येक Tense के कुछ मुख्य प्रयोग पर विचार करेंगे।

Simple Present Tense

1. चिरंतन सत्य (Universal Truth), सिद्धांत (Principle) तथा स्थायी कार्य व्यापार (Permanent activity) का बोध कराने के लिए इस Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे

- The sun rises in the east.
- The earth moves round the sun.
- Man is mortal.
- A mother loves her children. Water boils at 100°C.
- Oil floats on water.
- Honey is sweet.
- Two and two is four.

2. नियमित (regular), स्वाभाविक (habitual), बार बार होनेवाले (repeated) तथा सामान्य (usual) कार्य व्यापार की अभिव्यक्ति के लिए इस Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे

- I get up everyday at five o'clock.
- She goes to the cinema every Sunday.
- I never tell a lie.
- She always helps me.
- He goes to school everyday..
- I take tea without sugar.
- I live in Patna.
- Ram and Mohan are students.
- 3. अधिकार (possession) दिखाने के लिए इस Tense का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे
- This book belongs to me.
- He has a car.
- He owns a big house.

4. Human feelings, emotions तथा mental activity को व्यक्त करने के लिए इस Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे

- We love our country.
- We believe in God.
- I love the red rose.
- I understand your problem.
- I think he is always right.
- I know that he can't do this.
- I feel that I should not vex her.
- You trust in her.

5. इस Tense का प्रयोग भविष्य में होनेवाले कार्यक्रम निर्णय / पूर्व निर्धारित योजना का बोध कराने के लिए भी होता है और इससे Future Time का बोध होता है। जैसे

- a. The Chief Minister comes here tomorrow. (मुख्यमंत्री कल यहाँ आएँगे।)
- b. He leaves for London next Sunday. (वह अगले रविवार को लंदन खाना होगा।)
- c. The plane takes off at 10a.m. (विमान दस बजे उड़ेगा।)
- d. I go to Mumbai next week. (मैं अगले सप्ताह मुंबई जाऊँगा।)

e. When does the college reopen? (कॉलेज पुनः कब खुलेगा ?)

Note: ऐसे वाक्यों में future time बतानेवाले Adverbs Time का प्रयोग होता है।

6. अगर Principal Clause में Future Tense प्रयुक्त रहे तो समय/शर्त का बोध करानेवाले Subordinate Clause में Present Tense का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे -

- We shall get wet if it rains.
- You will get success if you try hard.
- I shall teach him if he comes.
- I shall wait till you finish your lunch.
- We shall start as soon as we are ready.
- If you read. You will pass.
- If you take medicine, you will get well.
- If he runs fast, he will win.

7. भूतकाल की घटना को सुस्पष्ट तथा जोरदार बनाने के लिए Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे

A gang of robbers attacks the village last night. They open fire and carry away whatever they see.

8. अखबार में भूतकाल की घटना के विवरण में भी Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे

The Chief Minister challenges the Election Commissioner on many issues.

Three prisoners escape from jail.

9. मैच या किसी आयोजन का आँखों देखा हाल सुनाने में यानी commentary को living बनाने के उद्देश्य से Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे

Murlidharan throws the ball.

Dhoni moves a bit and hits the ball and scores six runs..

10. Here या There से प्रारंभ होनेवाले वैसे Exclamatory Sentence में Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग होता है, जिससे किसी कार्य के जारी रहने का बोध होता है। जैसे

Here comes the king! There goes the bus!

Here he comes!

There she blows!

Present Continuous Tense

1. इस Tense का प्रयोग उस कार्य व्यापार के लिए होता है, जो बोलते वक्त जारी हो (for an action going on at the time of speaking)। जैसे -

She is playing in the room.

He is singing a song.

I am reading a newspaper now. My brother is sleeping.

2. इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे काम के होने या चालू रहने का बोध कराने में भी होता है जो तत्काल नहीं हो रहा है (इसी क्षण यानी बोलते वक्त). परंतु अभीष्ट समय के आस-पास या इन दिनों हो रहा है (for an action happening about this time but not necessarily at the moment of speaking)। जैसे -

(a) He is reading mathematics these days.

वह आजकल गणित पढ़ रहा है- बोलते वक्त नहीं, परंतु आजकल this time. - about

(b) I am reading 'Hamlet'. (but I am not reading at this moment)

3. इस Tense का प्रयोग भविष्य में होनेवाले कार्यक्रम/निर्णय / पूर्व निर्धारित योजना का बोध कराने के लिए भी होता है, परंतु इस आशय के लिए वैसे Adverbs of Time का प्रयोग करना आवश्यक हो जाता है, जिनसे Future Time का बोध होता है। जैसे

- The Prime Minister is returning tomorrow.
- We are buying a car next year.
- She is coming tomorrow.
- I am leaving for Delhi next week.
- I am going to the cinema tonight.
- The Chief Minister is landing at 8 o'clock.
- She is dancing this evening.

4. इस Tense का प्रयोग कार्य करने के इरादे (intention) या संभावना (likelihood) का भी बोध कराने के लिए होता है और इससे future time का भाव व्यक्त होता है। जैसे

- I am going to die.

I am going to buy a car.

We are going to play the match.

Note: निम्नलिखित Verbs का प्रयोग सामान्यतया Present Continuous Tense में नहीं होता है

(a) Verbs of perception: see, hear, smell, notice, feel, taste.

(b) Verbs of appearing: appear, look, seem.

(c) Verbs of emotion, state of mind or thinking want, wish, desire, feel, like, dislike, love, hate, hope, doubt, believe, disbelieve, think, suppose. agree, consider, remember. forget, know, understand, mean, mind.

(d) Verbs denoting possession: have, own, possess, contain, consist of, belong to.

इन वाक्यों पर ध्यान दें

Incorrect	Correct
He is knowing me well.	He knows me well.
I am understanding it.	I understand it.
I am feeling that you are correct.	I feel that you are correct.
I am believing it.	I believe it.
He is owning a car.	He owns a car.
He is having a beautiful wife.	He has a beautiful wife.
She is having a good house.	She has a good house.
I am smelling something burning.	I smell something burning.
why is she appearing so sad?	why does she appear so sad.
This book is belonging to me.	This book belongs to me.
The pot is containing milk.	The pot contains milk.

Present Perfect Tense

1. यह Tense एक प्रकार से past और present का मिश्रण है। इससे ऐसे कार्य व्यापार का बोध होता है, जो भूतकाल में हुआ (हाल में नजदीक में, अभी-अभी कुछ देर पहले या कुछ दिन

पहले या इतने दिन पहले, जिसका कोई लेखा-जोखा नहीं हो), परंतु जिसका संबंध present से है, जिसका मतलब, विशेष अर्थ, perfection या implication present time से है। जैसे He has seen the Tajmahal (उसने ताजमहल देखा है।) इस वाक्य की क्रिया Present Perfect Tense में है। ताजमहल देखने का काम past में हुआ। हो सकता है कि निकट भूत में हुआ हो या बहुत दिन पहले हुआ हो। इस तथ्य को Past Indefinite Tense द्वारा भी व्यक्त किया जा सकता है - He saw the Tajmahal (उसने ताजमहल देखा)। परंतु Present Perfect Tense का प्रयोग इस वाक्य की क्रिया का प्रभाव वर्तमान से जोड़ता है जो क्रिया Past time में संपन्न हुई। अर्थात् वाक्य का अभिप्राय यह हो सकता है इसलिए वह ताजमहल के बारे में कह सकता है या इसलिए उसे दोबारा ताजमहल देखने की इच्छा नहीं है। परंतु इस वाक्य की क्रिया का प्रयोग Past Indefinite Tense में किया जाए तो ऐसा कोई अभिप्राय वर्तमान समय में नहीं निकलेगा। कुछ और वाक्य लें और उनका संबंध वर्तमान से जोड़े (a) He has washed his room. उसने अपना कमरा साफ किया है। इसलिए उसका कमरा चमक रहा है या इसलिए उसका कमरा साफ है कमरा साफ करने का काम पहले हुआ परंतु वर्तमान से इसका संबंध है। (b) Ram has lost his pen. राम ने अपनी कलम खो दी है। इसलिए वह पेंसिल से लिख रहा है। इसलिए वह उदास है। इसलिए वह डर रहा है कि उसके पिता उसे पीटेंगे। अर्थात् वर्तमान से संबंध है।

FLUENT SPOKEN ENGLISH GRAMMAR
(c) I have remembered my lesson. मैंने अपना पाठ याद कर लिया है। इसलिए मैं अब खेलने जा रहा हूँ। अब आप मुझसे पूछ सकते हैं। अब मुझे पिटने का डर नहीं है। अर्थात् वर्तमान से संबंध है।

(d) I have eaten. मैंने खा लिया है। अब मुझे खाने की जरूरत नहीं है। इसलिए आप मेरी चिंता न करें। इसलिए मैं अब खाने के इंड्रेंट से मुक्त हूँ। अर्थात् वर्तमान से संबंध है।

(e) Have you seen my brother? क्या तुमने मेरे भाई को देखा है? अर्थात् प्रश्नकर्ता यह जानना चाहेगा कि वह कहाँ है या वह उसके बारे में क्या opinion रखता है।

(1) I have broken my leg. मैंने अपनी टाँग तोड़ ली है। टाँग अभी भी टूटी हुई है वर्तमान से संबंध है। परंतु I broke my leg से यह स्पष्ट नहीं होता कि अभी तक उसकी टाँग टूटी हुई है या ठीक हो गई है। आप देख रहे हैं कि क्रिया past time में संपन्न हुई, परंतु उसका अभिप्राय प्रभाव, संबंध वर्तमान समय से है यही Present Perfect Tense का मुख्य प्रयोग है।

2. इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य व्यापार का बोध कराने के लिए भी होता है, जो भूतकाल में आरंभ हुआ और वर्तमान में जारी है। इस प्रकार के अर्थ के लिए वाक्य में for/since का भी प्रयोग होता है। जैसे

We have lived in this house since 1990, (अभी भी रह रहे हैं।)

We have known each other for ten years. (अभी भी एक दूसरे को जानते हैं।)

I have been ill since Monday. (अभी भी बीमार हूँ)

Note 1. जो कार्य व्यापार भूतकाल में शुरू हुआ और अभी भी जारी है, उसे व्यक्त करने के लिए दो Tenses हैं - Present Perfect Tense तथा Present Perfect Continuous Tense. कुछ Verbs ऐसे हैं, जिनका प्रयोग हम Present Perfect Tense तथा Present Perfect Continuous Tense दोनों में कर सकते हैं परंतु वैसे Verbs जो प्रायः Continuous Tense में प्रयुक्त नहीं होते हैं, उनके लिए Present Perfect Tense का ही प्रयोग करना पड़ता है। जैसे

I have lived in this town since 1968.

I have been living in this town since 1968. He has studied for two hours.

He has been studying for two hours. परंतु "I have been knowing him for ten years" आप नहीं लिख सकते हैं। इसके बदले आपको लिखना होगा – I have known him for ten years. ऐसा इसलिए कि verb 'to know' का प्रयोग सामान्य अर्थ में Continuous Tense में नहीं होता है।

Note 2. इस Tense के साथ ever (कभी), never (कभी नहीं), always (हमेशा), occasionally (कभी-कभी), often (प्रायः), several times (अनेक बार), already (पहले से ही, पहले ही), yet (अब तक, अभी तक), just (तुरंत), lately (हाल में), recently (हाल में), so far (अब तक, जहाँ तक), up to now (अभी तक), up to the present (वर्तमान समय तक) इत्यादि adverbs/ adverbials का प्रयोग होता है।

Note 3. इस Tense के साथ 'ago' का प्रयोग नहीं होता है न ही भूतकालिक समयसूचक शब्दों का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे

Incorrect	Correct
He has come yesterday.	He came yesterday.
I have seen him two years ago,	I saw him two years ago.

Present Perfect Continuous Tense

1. Present Perfect Continuous Tense का प्रयोग मुख्यतः उस कार्य व्यापार को व्यक्त करने के लिए होता है, जो past में प्रारंभ हुआ और अभी भी हो रहा है। जैसे-

He has been sleeping for two hours.

It has been raining since morning.

I have been reading since 9 o'clock.

We have been living in this town for ten years.

2. Present Perfect Continuous Tense का प्रयोग वैसे कार्य व्यापार को भी व्यक्त करने के लिए होता है, जो past time में प्रारंभ हुआ, कुछ समय तक जारी रहा और अभी तत्काल बंद या समाप्त हो गया है। जैसे -

I am tired; I have been running round the town. day.

Someone has been writing with my pen.

He has been teasing her.

Someone has been wearing my shirt.

Simple Past Tense

1. Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य व्यापार के लिए होता है, भूतकाल में समाप्त हो गया। जैसे-

I met him yesterday.

He died in 1980.

She came to me.

Mr Das taught us.

My father bought a new car. She missed the train last night.

Newton discovered the laws of gravitation.

2. Past time से related situation का वर्णन करने में भी इस Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे

It was very hot.

It was 1980.

Mohan was ill

Vanka was an orphan.

She was a good girl.

We were happy there.

3. इस Tense का प्रयोग भूतकाल में किसी कार्य को करने की आदत का बोध कराने में भी होता है। जैसे

He always advised me. She used to dance.

I used to smoke.

I never touched wine.

He always carried an umbrella.

I went home on Sundays.

4. कभी-कभी भूतकाल में किसी कार्य के जारी रहने का बोध कराने में भी इस Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे While they danced, we sang.

While he played, I wrote a letter.

When the child played. the mother cooked food.

5. As if As though. I wish, If only. It is time इत्यादि के बाद unreal past का बोध कराने के लिए Simple Past Tense का प्रयोग किया जाता है। जैसे

He talks as if he were my boss.

I wish I were a king.

If only I had enough money.

It is time we started playing tennis.

Past Continuous Tense

1. Past Continuous Tense का प्रयोग मुख्यतः भूतकाल में किसी कार्य व्यापार के जारी रहने का बोध कराने के लिए होता है। जैसे

They were walking.

I was reading. It was raining.

Boys were playing in the field.

When he came to me I was reading a novel.

2. उस स्थिति में भी Past Continuous Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होता है। जब यह व्यक्त

करना हो कि past time में किसी घटना के समय दूसरा कार्य व्यापार पहले से continue कर रहा था। जैसे

I was reading when he came in.

It was raining when he went out.

He was sleeping when he was shot dead.

He came in while I was reading.

I met him when he was crossing the bridge.

It was raining this morning when I got up.

The sun was shining when he went out.

We were living in France when the war began.

3. भूतकाल में एक ही समय में दो कार्य होते रहने की स्थिति बताने के लिए Past Continuous Tense का प्रयोग इस प्रकार किया जाता है.

While he was dancing. I was singing.

While the child was sleeping, the mother was doing the domestic work.

Past Perfect Tense

1. यदि भूतकाल में दो कार्य हुए हों और एक कार्य दूसरे कार्य के पहले पूर्णरूपेण समाप्त हो गया हो, तो पहले समाप्त होनेवाले कार्य के लिए Past Perfect Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग और बाद में समाप्त होनेवाले कार्य के लिए Past Indefinite Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे डॉक्टर के आने के पहले रोगी मर चुका था। इस वाक्य से यह स्पष्ट है कि भूतकाल में दो काम हुए - (a) रोगी का मरना तथा (b) डॉक्टर का आना। रोगी का मरना पहले संपन्न हुआ, अतः इसके लिए Past Perfect Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होगा। 'डॉक्टर का आना' बाद में संपन्न हुआ, अतः इसके लिए Past Indefinite Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होगा। इस प्रकार इस वाक्य का अनुवाद होगा -

The patient had died before the doctor came.

इस प्रकार Past Perfect Tense की क्रिया से यह बोध होता है कि कोई कार्य भूतकाल में किसी घटना के पहले संपन्न हो चुका था। कुछ और examples लें -

I had reached school before the bell rang.

The thief had fled away before the police came, When we reached there, the dinner had started.

She had finished her work before I went to her house.

The crops had failed before it rained.

I had left the place when he came.

Note: यदि भूतकाल में दो कार्य हुए हों, एक कार्य दूसरे कार्य के तुरंत बाद, तो कभी-कभी उन दोनों कार्यों के बीच इतना कम अंतराल रहता है कि यह बोध ही नहीं होता कि एक कार्य की पूर्णरूपेण समाप्ति के बाद ही दूसरा कार्य संपादित हुआ। ऐसे वाक्यों के दोनों भागों में Past Indefinite Tense का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे -

(a) जब मैंने उसे पीटा, तब वह गाली देने लगा।

When I beat him he began to abuse me.

(b) जब वर्ग समाप्त हुआ, तब छात्रगण बाहर चले गए।

When the class ended the students went out.

2. आपने Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे वाक्यों में देखा है जिनके दो भाग हैं। कभी-कभी ऐसे वाक्यों के दो भाग नहीं होते हैं, परंतु प्रसंग (context) से स्पष्ट रहता है कि अभीष्ट कार्य दूसरे कार्य के बहुत पहले ही समाप्त हो चुका था। ऐसे वाक्यों में दूसरा कार्य लुप्त (silent) या understood रहता है। ऐसे वाक्यों में भी Past Perfect Tense की क्रिया का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे

(a) I had already completed my work.

मैंने पहले ही अपना काम पूरा कर लिया था।

(b) She had reached much earlier.

यह बहुत पहले पहुँच चुकी थी।

(c) I had never been to London before.

इसके पूर्व मैं लंदन नहीं गया था।

3. Past Perfect Tense का प्रयोग अनेक परिस्थितियों में Present Perfect Tense के Past Equivalent के रूप में होता है। जैसे

(a) I have been ill for ten days. - Present Perfect Tense

I had been ill for ten days. - Past Perfect Tense

(b) I have served in the army since 2005 - Present Perfect Tense

I had served in the army since 2005. - Past Perfect Tense

(c) He has not drunk for ten years. - Present Perfect Tense

He had not drunk for ten years. - Past Perfect Tense

Past Perfect Continuous Tense

इस Tense को क्रिया से यह बोध होता है कि कोई कार्य व्यापार भूतकाल में कुछ समय तक जारी रहा। जैसे -

I had been reading.

They had been fighting for ten years.

She had been dancing since 2007.

Future Indefinite Tense Or, Simple Future Tense

1. Simple Future Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य व्यापार के लिए होता है, जो भविष्य में सामान्य रूप से होगा। जैसे

I shall go to Patna tomorrow.

He will help me.

I shall appear at the examination next year.

2. इस Tense का प्रयोग इच्छा (will), संकल्प (determination), चेतावनी (threat/command) इरादा (intention) इत्यादि का बोध कराने के लिए भी होता है। जैसे

I will serve the nation.

I will never tell a lie.

You shall not cheat her again. You shall come in time.

Future Continuous Tense

इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य व्यापार के लिए होता है, जो भविष्य में किसी खास वक्त पर होता रहेगा। जैसे -

He will be sleeping then..

I shall be staying there.

Future Continuous Tense

इस Tense का प्रयोग ऐसे कार्य व्यापार के लिए होता है, जो भविष्य में किसी निर्धारित समय तक समाप्त हो चुका रहेगा। जैसे -

I shall have finished the job by that time.

He will have come by ten o'clock.

The patient will have died before the doctor comes.

He will have come before I sleep.

Note: ध्यान दें कि शर्तवाले उपवाक्यों में Simple Present Tense का प्रयोग हुआ है।

Future Perfect Continuous Tense

इस Tense से यह बोध होता है कि कार्य भविष्य में कुछ समय तक जारी रहेगा। जैसे -

I shall have been reading for two years.

Exercises Worked Out

Use the correct verb form in the following sentences chosen from the ones given in brackets-

1. She to school everyday. (goes, is going)

Ans: goes

2. I her last year. (have met, met)

Ans : met

3. I working in this school for the last ten years. (am, have been)

Ans : have been

4. we him yesterday. (saw, have seen)

Ans : saw

5. he will since Friday. (has been, is)

Ans : has been

6. When I reached the station, the train left. (has, was, had)

Ans : had

7. I shall help you, if you To me. (will come, come)

Ans : come

8. I wish I a rich man. (was, were, am)

Ans : were

9. He up at 5 o'clock everyday. (gets, is getting)

Ans : gets

10. It raining for an hour. (is, has been)

Ans : has been

11. He For London next week. (left, leaves)

Ans : leaves

12. The thief red-handed. (was caught, caught)

Ans : was caught

13. While they prayed, we (sing, sang)

Ans : sang

14. On Sunday s they to the movies. (went, go)

Ans : go

15. He said that she Tomorrow. (would go, will go)

Ans : would go

16. The Chief Minister For Delhi tomorrow. (leaves, has left)

Ans : leaves

17. The boy Making a noise for a long time. (is, has been)

Ans : has been

18. Ram gone before you came. (has, had)

Ans : had

19. The train Already. (has left, is leaving)

Ans : has left

20. have you Him? (saw, seen)

Ans : seen.

Exercises - 6

Use the correct verb forms in the following sentences, chosen from the ones given in brackets-

1. He to school everyday. (goes, is going)

2. The sun In the east. (is rising, rises)
3. He always by bus. (goes, is going)
4. On Sundays they to the movies. (went, go)
5. He usually in his bath. (sings, sang)
6. He a poem now. (reads, is reading)
7. He up at five o'clock everyday. (gets, is getting)
8. The baby because it is hungry now. (cries, is crying)
9. He never a lie. (is telling, tells)
10. He In the field at the moment. (plays, is playing)
11. Ravi to Delhi tomorrow. (is going, has gone)
12. She for Mumbai next week. (leaves, left)
13. I Jay tonight. (am meeting, meet)
14. I English this year. (study, am studying)
15. I him tomorrow. (see, am seeing)
16. The Prime Minister here tomorrow. (arrived, arrives)
17. He just out. (has, gone, goes)
18. Who has my pen? (stolen, stole)
19. He the television now. (watches, is watching)
20. Hard work success. (brings, brought)
21. She habitually late. (comes, is coming)
22. I the Tajmahal. (have seen, see)
23. He In the office for the last ten years. (is working, has been working)
24. It for two hours. (is raining, has been raining)
25. She Waiting for an hour. (is, has been)
26. He letters since breakfast. (writes, has been writing)
27. I For the bus since 4 o'clock. (am waiting, have been waiting)
28. I absent for five days. (am, have been)

Exercises - 7

1. He next month. (went, will go)
2. My father Tomorrow. (comes, will come)
3. He to Delhi tomorrow. (is going, went)
4. He to Delhi last week. (will go, went)
5. My father seventy next month. (will be, will)
6. I shall teach him if he (will come, comes)
7. I shall help you if you To me. (come, will come)
8. He If he works hard. (will pass, passes)
9. Work hard or you (Will fail, fail)
10. She will not go out if it (rains, rained)
11. The teacher you if you go to him. (will helps, is helping)
12. Don't come if it (rains, will rain)
13. The patient had died before the doctor..... (comes, came)
14. The children had slept before Ihome (reached, reach)
15. She The work before I went to her house. (finished, had finished)
16. When I reached the station, the train left. (had, was)
17. He school before the bell rang. (had reached, reached)
18. The crops before it rained. (failed, had failed)
19. We arrived at the station after the train (left, had left)
20. I the place when he came. (left, had left)
21. I a book when he came in. (read, was reading)
22. She when I met her this morning. (was dressing, dressed)
23. I saw him when Ifor a bus. (was waiting, waited)
24. When I in the field, it started raining. (was sitting, sat)
25. He was shot dead when he (was sleeping, slept)
26. While they played we (sing, sang)

Some More Solved Examples

Put the verbs in brackets into the most suitable tense-

1. The earth (move) round the sun.
2. I (see) him yesterday.
3. He (go) to Delhi tomorrow.
4. It (rain) for two hours.
5. I shall go before the sun (set).
6. If you help me I (help) you.
7. Who (discover) America?
8. The patient (die) before the doctor came.
9. If I (be) a king, I would be happy.
10. I wish I (be) a king.
11. I (live) here since 1980.
12. He (not return) yet.
13. She (watch) the television now.
14. She (not see) me for a long time.
15. They (come) here a month ago.
16. She (go) to the movies every Sunday.
17. My father (be) seventy next month.
18. He (miss) the train last night.
19. She (finish) the work before I went to her house.
20. The crops (fail) before it rained.
21. The book (come) out two months ago.
22. If I were a nightingale I (sing) day and night.
23. He speaks as if he (be) my boss.
24. Sita (go) an hour ago.
25. We (be) here for two days.
26. Hard work (bring) success.

27. Oil (float) on water.
28. He (meet) me at the station.
29. He shall never fail as he (read) sincerely.
30. I (stay) here until he answers me.
31. He (be) a boy.
32. We (be) boys.
33. She habitually (come) late.
34. I wish he (be) the leader of my party.
35. The dog (bark) at me.
36. The man was (bite) by a dog.
37. I (read) a book when he came in.
38. He was (shoot) dead.
39. Dickens (write) novels.
40. Pardon me for not (write) to you.
41. He was (beat) by the police.
42. When he heard the sad news he (weep).
43. I (meet) your father in Mumbai.
44. Have you (write) the letter?
45. If you (come) to my house, we (go) together.
46. He said that he (be) a diligent boy.
47. Sohan (realize) that his train had stopped.
48. I (think) she was quite attractive.
49. He hoped that he (have) not made a mistake.
50. The picture was (hang) on the wall.

Answers

1. The earth moves round the sun.
2. I saw him yesterday.
3. He will go to Delhi tomorrow.

4. It has been raining for two hours.
5. I shall go before the sun sets.
6. If you help me I shall help you.
7. Who discovered America?
8. The patient had died before the doctor came.
9. If I were a king, I would be happy.
10. I wish I were a king.
11. I have been living here since 1980.
12. He has not returned yet.
13. She is watching the television now.
14. She has not seen me for a long time.
15. They came here a month ago.
16. She goes to the movies every Sunday.
17. My father will be seventy next month.
18. He missed the train last night.
19. She had finished the work before I went to her house.
20. the crops had failed before it rained.
21. The book came out two months ago.
22. if I were a nightingale I would sing day and night.
23. He speaks as if he were my boss.
24. Sita went out an hour ago.
25. We have been here for two days.
26. Hard work brings success.
27. Oil floats on water.
28. He met me at the station.
29. He shall never fail as he reads sincerely.
30. I shall stay here until he answers me.
31. He is a boy.

32. We are boys.
33. She habitually comes late.
34. I wish he were the leader of my party.
35. The dog is barking at me.
36. The man was bitten by a dog.
37. I was reading a book when he came in.
38. He was shot dead.
39. Dickens wrote novels.
40. Pardon me for not writing to you.
41. He was beaten by the police.
42. When he heard the sad news, he wept.
43. I met your father in Mumbai.
44. Have you written the letter?
45. if you come to my house, we shall go together.
46. He said that he was a diligent boy.
47. Sohan realized that his train had stopped.
48. I thought she was quite attractive.
49. He hoped that he had not made a mistake.
50. The picture was hung on the wall.

Question Tags

इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें -

1. तुम राम को जानते हो न?	You know Jay, don't you?
2. वह घर गया था न?	He went home, didn't he?
3. तुम राम के भाई हो न?	You are Jay's brother, aren't you?
4. तुम मांस नहीं खाते हो न?	You don't eat meat, do you?
5. आप मेरी मदद करेंगे न?	You will help me, won't you?
6. तुमने ऐसा किया है न?	You have done so, haven't you?

इस प्रकार के वाक्य ज्यादातर बोलचाल की भाषा में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। वक्ता ऐसे वाक्यों से अपने अनुमान, विचार आदि व्यक्त करते हैं, परंतु साथ ही अपनी जिज्ञासा, शक या संदेह के कारण इसकी पुष्टि श्रोता से चाहते हैं।

ऐसे English Sentences के एक भाग Assertive/Imperative तथा दूसरा भाग Interrogative होते हैं। यह दूसरा भाग Question Tag कहलाता है।

Question और Question Tag में अंतर है। Question पूर्ण वाक्य होता है। तथा इसका प्रयोग स्वतंत्र रूप से होता है। Question Tag का प्रयोग स्वतंत्र रूप से नहीं होता है, इसे किसी वाक्य के अंत में जोड़कर प्रयोग किया जाता है। यदि हम किसी बात को नहीं जानते हैं, तो Question का प्रयोग करते हैं। परंतु जब हमारे सामने कोई ऐसा तथ्य/अनुमान/विचार आता है जिसपर हम पूर्णतः आश्वस्त नहीं होते हैं, तो इसकी पुष्टि के लिए Question Tag का प्रयोग करते हैं। Question Tag का प्रयोग करनेवाला व्यक्ति श्रोता से यह उम्मीद रखता है कि वह उसके कथन की पुष्टि करेगा। Question Tag का प्रयोग आम बोलचाल की भाषा में अनौपचारिक रूप से किया जाता है।

Question tags are short additions to sentences, to ask for confirmation of something we are not sure about, or to ask for agreement. Question tags are not full questions. They cannot stand by themselves like other questions. The use of question tags is colloquial.

Question Tag बनाने के लिए Anomalous Finite का प्रयोग किया जाता है। अतः आप निम्नलिखित 24 Anomalous Finites तथा Anomalous Finite + not के संक्षिप्त रूप (Contracted Forms) को अवश्य याद कर लें

Do + not = don't

Does + not = doesn't

Did + not = didn't

Have + not = haven't

Has + not = hasn't

Had + not = hadn't

Was + not = wasn't

Were + not = weren't

Shall + not = shan't

Will + not = won't

Can + not = can't

May + not = mayn't

Am I not ... = Aren't I ... ?

is + not = isn't

are + not = aren't

might + not = mightn't

could + not = couldn't

would + not = wouldn't

should + not = shouldn't

ought + not = oughtn't

must + not = mustn't

need + not = needn't

dare + not = daren't

used + not = usedn't

Question Tags के Patterns

1. Anomalous Finite + Subject?

2. Anomalous Finite + n't + Subject?

Note: 1. Question Tag lexical verb (-go, eat, laugh, etc) का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

2. यदि किसी statement के अंत में Question Tag का प्रयोग करना होता है, तो Question Tag के Anomalous Finite का चयन statement में प्रयुक्त Anomalous Finite पर निर्भर करता है। अगर statement में कोई Anomalous Finite न रहे, तो Question Tag में do/ does / did का प्रयोग होगा। Question Tag का Anomalous Finite Singular Number में होगा कि Plural Number में इसका चयन Question Tag में प्रयुक्त Subject के अनुसार होगा न कि statement में प्रयुक्त Subject के अनुसार।

3. Question Tag Subject for Pronoun Introductory "There" ही हो सकता है। Question Tag में Noun का प्रयोग नहीं होता है।

Question Tags बनाने के नियम:

1. यदि मूलकथन positive हो, तो Negative Question Tag का प्रयोग होगा और यदि मूलकथन negative हो, तो Positive Question Tag का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे -

You take tea, don't you?

You don't take tea, do you?

She is beautiful, isn't she?

Ram went home, didn't he?

She is not beautiful, is she?

Ram did not go home, did he?

He will help me, won't he?

He will not help me, will he?

I am right, aren't I?

Note: एक बात याद रखें कि negative statement का अर्थ यह नहीं है कि वाक्य में negative verb का प्रयोग अवश्य हो। आपको अनेक ऐसे वाक्य मिलेंगे जिनमें positive verb का प्रयोग है, परंतु negative Subject/Object/Complement/Adverb के प्रयोग से वाक्य में नकारात्मक भाव है। ऐसे वाक्यों के साथ भी Positive Question Tag का प्रयोग होता है। यदि neither, no, none, no one, nobody, nothing, few, little, hardly, rarely, scarcely seldom किसी clause में प्रयुक्त हो, तो अभीष्ट clause negative statement कहलाएगा। जैसे -

They had no friend, had they?

No one knows this, do they?

Nothing is perfect, is it?

Nobody is allowed to come, are they? They have nothing, have they? A barking dog seldom bites, does he? Few people will come, will they? Neither of them helped you, did they? He knows little about her, does he? परंतु a few तथा a little जो positive expressions हैं, के साथ Negative Question Tag का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे -

They have a little money, haven't they? Only a few students will get the awards, won't they?

2. request / command के साथ प्रायः will you/won't you Question Tag के रूप में आता है। Negative request/command के साथ will you का प्रयोग होता है। लेकिन Positive request/command के साथ will you तथा won't you दोनों में से किसी एक का प्रयोग हो सकता है। जैसे -

Don't go there again, will you?

Don't forget, will you?

Open the window, will you? Open the window, won't you?

Please pass me your notebook, will you?

Please pass me your notebook, won't you? Note: (a) ज्यादा urgency दिखाने के लिए Positive request/command के साथ won't you Question Tag का ही प्रयोग होता है। जैसे -

Remember to shut the door, won't you?

Be careful while counting rupees. won't you? (b) जब Imperative Verb से डॉट/फटकार का भाव व्यक्त होता है, तब can't you Question Tag का प्रयोग होता है। जैसे

Use your own pen, can't you?

Use your own sense, can't you? 3. Let's (let us...) a shall we Question Tag है।

Let us dance, shall we?

Let's go, shall we?

Let us play together, shall we? परंतु Let him/her/them/Ram इत्यादि के साथ will you Question Tag आता है। जैसे Let him do that, will you? Let them go, will you?

Question Tag के Subject का चयन:

1. अगर मूलकथन का Subject कोई Personal Pronoun है, तो Question Tag का Subject भी वही Personal Pronoun होगा। अगर मूलकथन का Subject कोई Noun है, तो Question Tag का Subject उक्त Noun के Number और Gender के अनुसार he/she/it/they होगा।
जैसे

They read, don't they?

She reads, doesn't she?

You know it, don't you?

We saw him, didn't we?

I have not cheated you, have I?

It is true, isn't it?

Ram and Shyam are fast friends, aren't they?

Ram was absent, wasn't he?

Sita is not beautiful, is she?

The boys are not going tomorrow, are they?

The chair is not strong enough, is it?

2. Subjects There, One, This/That, These/Those

हो, तो Question Tags के Subjects क्रमशः there, one, it और

जैसे There is beauty in it, isn't there?

One can't do this, can one?

This is mine, isn't it?

That is enough, isn't it?

These are his cows, aren't they?

Those are good examples, aren't they? Note: af one, this, that, these 3f those

Adjective

तरह हो यानी इनके तुरंत बाद Noun प्रयुक्त रहे, तो Question Tag का Subject Noun के अनुसार he/she/it/they होगा। जैसे One boy can lift it, can't he? This girl came yesterday, didn't she?

Those pens are mine, aren't they? This chair is useless, isn't it?

That woman has no sense, has she?

3. Subject no one, anyone, someone, every one, everybody, somebody # nobody , at Question Tag & Subject they होगा।

जैसे-

No one could do so, could they?

Everyone helped you, didn't they?

Somebody stole my pen, didn't they?

Anyone can do so, can't they?

Nobody has seen God, have they?

Someone may come today, mayn't they?

Everybody is your enemy, aren't they?

4. यदि no, any, every some इत्यादि के साथ thing लगा रहे यानी nothing, anything, something everything Subject तो Question Tag के Subject के रूप में it का प्रयोग होगा, they का नहीं। जैसे

Everything is clear to you, isn't it? Nothing could be done, could it? Anything can be done for you, can't it?

Something is to be done, isn't it?

5. यदि statement subject All of us/None of us/One of us/ Anyone of us/Some of us/Most of us/Everyone of us/Either of us/ Neither of us रहे, तो Question Tag के subject के रूप में we आएगा। यदि us के बदले you या them रहे, तो Question Tag के Subject के रूप में क्रमशः you और they आएगा। जैसे

All of us can do this, can't we?

All of you can do this, can't you?

All of them can do this, can't they?

Most of you have read the book, haven't you?

Most of us have read the book, haven't we?

Most of them don't know this, do they?

Either of you is guilty, aren't you? None of us have seen the Tajmahal, have we?

Neither of you has done this, have you?

Some Special Notes:

1. I am your best friend, aren't I? 48 aren't I? et Question Tag है। इसके बदले 'amn't I' न लिखें।

2. Negative Question Tag 4 anomalous finite + not f (contracted form) का ही प्रयोग होगा।

3. dare / need का प्रयोग Full Verb तथा Auxiliary Verb दोनों ही प्रकार से होता है। यदि मूलकथन में dare/need का प्रयोग Auxiliary Verb की तरह हो, तो Question Tag में dare/need का ही प्रयोग होगा। यदि मूलकथन में dare/ need का प्रयोग Full Verb के रूप में हो, तो Question Tag में dare/need का प्रयोग न होकर कोई अन्य उपयुक्त Anomalous Finite का प्रयोग होगा। जैसे —

He dare not go there, dare he?

He doesn't dare to go there, does he? they?

They have dared to beat him, haven't I? needn't ask him, need I?

I don't need to ask him, do I?

He dares to go there, doesn't he?

He needs a book, doesn't he?

I will need nothing, will I?

No students dare disobey, dare they?

You need have no fear, need you?

Nobody will dare to beat us, will they? (Auxiliary Verb के रूप में dare/need का प्रयोग मुख्यतः Negative और Interrogative Sentences में ही होता है।)

4. अगर मूलकथन में 'used to' का प्रयोग हो, तो Question Tag में usedn't होगा। जैसे didn't का प्रयोग होगा। अगर usedn't to का प्रयोग हो, तो used/did का प्रयोग He used to go there, usedn't he?

He used to go there, didn't he?

They usedn't to go there, used they?

They usedn't to go there, did they?

Solved Examples

Fill in the blanks with suitable question tags-

1. I am right, ?

aren't I

2. I am not guilty,?

am I

3. I am doing for you,?	Aren't I
4. You are reading well,?	Aren't you
5. You are not sure,?	are you
6. Jay is very rich,?	isn't he
7. They are not anxious,?	are they
8. We are ready to face every danger,?	Aren't we
9. She has broken the glass,?	Hasn't she
10. Sheela has love for you,?	hasn't she
11. The boys have played well,?	Haven't they
12. Mohan has not yet decided,?	has he
13. We have been trying for years,?	Haven't we
14. Sita and Geeta will be present,?	won't they
15. We shall win the match,?	shan't we
16. Ganesh will not help you,?	Will he
17. I shall have success,?	Shan't I
18. It will not be raining then,?	Will it
19. He can't defeat you,?	Can he
20. We can do everything,?	can't we
21. She might come today,?	Mightn't she
22. The boy could pass,?	Couldn't they
23. They wouldn't dance,?	would they
24. We may win the race,?	mayn't we
25. You should not beat your brother,?	should you
26. We ought to respect our teachers,?	Oughtn't we
27. he was very brave,?	Wasn't he
28. They were not ready,?	Were they
29. He was to start the work,?	Wasn't he
30. You were learning how to drive,?	weren't you

31. She must help her sister,?	Mustn't she
32. he had an elephant,?	Hadn't he
33. You had to support him,?	Hadn't you
34. Mohan had not gone there,?	Had he
35. Ram knows me very well,?	doesn't he
36. The girl sings well,?	doesn't she
37. I always help you,?	Don't I
38. They don't beat you,?	Do they
39. Rajesh doesn't come to school,?	Does he
40. He speaks English well,?	Doesn't he
41. You leave for Mumbai tomorrow,?	Don't you
42. She does not do her job,?	Does she
43. She likes tea,?	doesn't she
44. They kept silent,?	didn't they
45. Rakesh made a mistake,?	Didn't he
46. He tried to cheat me,?	didn't he
47. The boys went to the zoo,?	didn't they
48. Rakesh and Suresh did not go there,?	Did they
49. You did not go there,?	did you
50. She did not come in time,?	did she

Question: Make meaningful sentences from the following table-

1. We find a large number of men waiting at the railway platform,	Will, you?
2. We don't see animals in their natural surroundings at a zoo,	Don't we?
3. You often go to your teacher,	Don't you?
4. He helps me with books,	Doesn't he?
5. He can take book home,	Do we?
6. You will not tease him,	Can't I?

Question: Make sentences from the following-

The Prime Minister			Goa London		Doesn't he?
I You He	leaves leave	for	Bonn Mumbai Delhi	tomorrow	Don't I? Don't you ?

Ans. 1. The Prime Minister leaves for Goa tomorrow, doesn't he?

2. I leave for London tomorrow, don't I?

3. You leave for Delhi tomorrow, don't you?

4. He leaves for Mumbai tomorrow, doesn't he?

EXERCISE 29

Rewrite the following sentences, adding question tags-

1. I am right.
2. I am not your enemy.
3. I am helping you.
4. We are friends.
5. We are not weak.
6. You are satisfied.
7. You are returning tomorrow.
8. She has a car.
9. He has not gone.
10. They have been defeated.
11. Jay has been playing since 9 o'clock.
12. She was irritated.
13. They were not ready.
14. I had warned you again and again.
15. She had beauty.
16. You had not a car.
17. Mohan will not help me.
18. She will do it.
19. We shall win the match.
20. We shall not do it.

21. Ganesh will have reached.
22. I shall get a prize.
23. We can't defeat them.
24. My brother can solve it.
25. It can be done.
26. Farmers should know the modern ways of cultivation.
27. You should not make a noise in the class.
28. We should obey our parents.
29. he would die.
30. We must serve the country.
31. You ought to help the poor.
32. They could pass the examination.
33. It might rain today.
34. Our team may win the match.
35. She knows English.
36. The girl sings well.
37. He always helps you.
38. They know how to swim.
39. I want to help you.
40. Indian farmers work hard.
41. She does not like you.
42. I don't tell a lie.
43. They do not go there.
44. You write well.
45. Sita kept silent.
46. He loved you.
47. He does not vex you.
48. I went there.
49. he wanted to save her.
50. The girls danced well.
51. He did not wait for me.
52. She did not support you.
53. They didn't appear at the examination.
54. She does not do her job.

55. I wanted to teach the boy.
56. They tried their best.
57. He leaves for Patna tomorrow.

Solved Examples:

- | | |
|--|-------------|
| 1. You dare not touch it,? | dare you |
| 2. You don't dare to touch it,? | do you |
| 3. he dares to beat him,? | Doesn't he |
| 4. You daren't go there,? | dare you |
| 5. You don't dare to go there,? | do you |
| 6. You dare to go there,? | don't you |
| 7. She dared to abuse him,? | |
| didn't she | |
| 8. The boys dared to stay there,? | didn't they |
| 9. We dare not face him,? | dare we |
| 10. She dare not face her father,? | Dare she |
| 11. She does not dare to face her father,? | does she |
| 12. We need not go there,? | Need we |
| 13. We don't need to go there,? | do we |
| 14. We need to go there,? | Don't we |
| 15. We needed your help,? | Didn't we |
| 16. Sita need not come here,? | need she |
| 17. I needn't read,? | Need I |
| 18. I don't need to read,? | do I |

EXERCISE

Fill in the blanks with suitable question tags-

1. He dare not catch snakes,?
2. He does not dare to catch snakes,?
3. He dares to catch snakes,?
4. I dared to oppose him,?
5. You dare not ask her father,?
6. You don't dare to ask her father,?

Solved Examples:

1.	Now I have no work,?	Have I
2.	The poor boy has no chance of success,?	has he
3.	Nobody was ready,?	were they
4.	Neither of them was ready,?	Were they
5.	Nobody can harm me,?	can they
6.	I have no one to support,?	Have I
7.	No one is to be blamed,?	Are they
8.	Nothing is perfect,?	is it
9.	he has little knowledge,?	Has he
10.	I know a little about her,?	Don't I
11.	Few persons were present there,?	were they
12.	You have a few good books,?	haven't you
13.	it is rarely found these days,?	Is it
14.	She seldom goes there,?	does she
15.	Shut the door,?	will you/won't you
16.	Please do me a favour,?	Will you/won't you
17.	Do come tomorrow,?	will you/won't you
18.	Don't cheat her,?	Will you
19.	Don't go there,?	Will you
20.	Please write to her,?	will you/won't you

EXERCISE

Fill in the blanks with suitable question tags-

1. He had no friends,?
2. You have no objection,?
3. We can say nothing about him,?
4. She has no time for me,?
5. No one has seen God,?
6. Nobody has ever said so,?
7. She does nothing,?
8. Neither of them has sense,?

Solved Examples:

- | | |
|--|---------------|
| 1. There are two boys in the class,? | Aren't there |
| 2. There is no doubt,? | Is there |
| 3. There were four boys there,? | weren't there |
| 4. There is no hope here,? | Is there |
| 5. There was truth in that,? | Wasn't there |
| 6. One can't beat him,? | can one |
| 7. This is useless,? | Isn't it |
| 8. That was not for me,? | was it |
| 9. These are his,? | aren't they |
| 10. Those are not for her,? | Are they |
| 11. One man can lift it,? | Can't he |
| 12. This boy is innocent,? | Isn't he |
| 13. That boy has broken the chair,? | Hasn't he |
| 14. Those mangoes are rotten,? | Aren't they |
| 15. This girl is beautiful,? | Isn't she |
| 16. This is of no use to me,? | Is it |
| 17. No one dare come here,? | dare they |
| 18. No one would come,? | would they |
| 19. Anyone will do this,? | Won't they |
| 20. Anyone can easily break the gate,? | Can't they |
| 21. Someone might come,? | mightn't they |
| 22. Everybody is ready now,? | Aren't they |
| 23. Somebody has beaten the dog,? | Haven't they |
| 24. Nobody can challenge us,? | Can they |
| 25. No salt is allowed,? | Is it |
| 26. Nothing was said,? | Was it |
| 27. Anything can be sold,? | can't it |
| 28. Everything is bright and beautiful,? | Isn't it |
| 29. Something must be done for us,? | Mustn't it |
| 30. All of us are present,? | Aren't we |

EXERCISE

Fill in the blanks with suitable question tags-

1. There is no reason to go,?
2. There are a lot of monkeys in the garden,?
3. There must be something there,?
4. One should always mind one's own business,?
5. This is beautiful,?
6. This boy can do us no harm,?
7. That is yours,?
8. That chain is made of steel,?
9. That girl sings well,?
10. These are for sale,?
11. those are for sale,?
12. these boys have no sense,?
13. These pens are very costly,?
14. Those men were working against us,?
15. Nobody dare go there,?
16. No one here can solve this problem,?
17. Everybody will support us,?
18. Somebody has stolen my pen,?
19. Hardly anybody came,?
20. Nobody liked the play,?
21. Everything is clear to you,?
22. Something has been left behind,?
23. Nothing can cure him,?
24. Anything wasn't left,?
25. All of us can defeat him,?
26. All of them have arrived,?
27. All of you are tired,?
28. None of us wanted to stay there,?
29. None of you have been able to do this,?
30. Some of them have agreed to your proposal,?
31. Most of them don't know the fact,?

EXERCISE 33

Complete the following sentences-

1. the best player, aren't I?
2. done this, have we?
3. going today, is she?
4. They have cheated you,?
5. It done, cheated you,?
6. You won't be late,?
7. Jay true, was he?
8. They help us, will?
9. They had loss, had they?
10. No one wanted to help the poor orphan,?
11. We have nothing to do,?
12. He face me, dare he?
13. He seldom visits us,?
14. Please give me your notebooks,?
15. Let us try to win the match,?
16. He did Come, did?
17. There is hope here, is?
18. You leave for Delhi tomorrow,?
19. This enough for me, is?
20. can't do this,one?
21. There came nobody,?
22. Open the gate,?
23. No student dare go out,?
24. The fisherman caught nothing,?
25. I did,?
26. Don't be afraid,?
27. Let us dance,?
28. Let him go out,?
29. Nothing is perfect,?
30. There was nothing there,?

Emphatic With Do/Does/Did

Emphatic का अर्थ है 'जोरदार मुख्य क्रिया के पहले do/does/did का प्रयोग कर कुछ वाक्यों को emphatic बनाया जाता है।

1. यदि वाक्य में प्रयुक्त क्रिया Simple Present Tense में हो, तो do/does का प्रयोग करें यदि प्रयुक्त क्रिया Simple Past Tense में हो, तो did का प्रयोग करें। एक बात ध्यान रखें कि do/does/did के बाद हमेशा VI ही प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे -

Non-emphatic

I know her.

We help you.

He eats meat.

Jay plays tennis.

I went there.

He went fishing.

He wanted to go.

Emphatic

I do know her.

We do help you.

He does eat meat.

Jay does play tennis.

I did go there.

He did go fishing.

He did want to go.

2. यदि वाक्य में have / has / had का प्रयोग मुख्य क्रिया के रूप में हो, तो emphatic बनाने के लिए do have/does have / did have का प्रयोग करें। ध्यान रखें कि do/does/did के बाद have का प्रयोग होगा, has / had का नहीं। जैसे

Non-emphatic

I have a car.

She has a radio.

She had a cow.

Emphatic

I do have a car.

She does have a radio.

She did have a cow.

Non-emphatic

Come tomorrow.

Write me a letter soon.

Come in.

Emphatic

Do come tomorrow.

Do write me a letter soon.

Do come in.

3. Imperative Sentence को emphatic बनाने के लिए Verb के पहले Do का प्रयोग करें। यहाँ ध्यान रखें कि does/did का प्रयोग Imperative Sentence के Verb के पहले कभी नहीं होगा। जैसे-

Note: पिछले पृष्ठ पर दिए गए वाक्यों में do/does/did का प्रयोग वाक्य को जोरदार बनाने के लिए किया गया है। ऐसे वाक्यों में do/does/did का अनुवाद होता है - जरूर / अवश्य ।
जैसे

मैं वहाँ अवश्य/ जरूर जाता हूँ।

मैं वहाँ जाता तो हूँ।

वह मुझे अवश्य / जरूर प्यार करती है।

वह मुझे प्यार करती तो है।

उसने अवश्य / जरूर तुम्हारी मदद की।

उसने तुम्हारी मदद की तो थी। मैंने उसे अवश्य / जरूर लिखा था।

मैंने उसे लिखा तो था।

उसे शांति अवश्य / जरूर है।

उसे शांति तो है।

कृपया मेरी मदद अवश्य / जरूर करें।

From Emphatic to Non-emphatic

Emphatic Sentence को Non-emphatic बनाने के लिए वाक्य में प्रयुक्त do/does/did को हटा दें और Subject के Number तथा Verb के Tense के अनुसार आवश्यक परिवर्तन करें। Emphatic Imperative को Non-emphatic बनाने के लिए सिर्फ do को हटा दें। जैसे-

Emphatic	Non-emphatic
I do help you.	I help you.
She does know me.	She knows me.
She did buy the book.	She bought the book.
I do have a car.	I have a car.

Worked out Examples

Emphatic

1. I do believe in God.
2. She does believe in God.
3. You do play tennis.
4. I do read at night.
5. Jay does play cricket.
6. He does want to read.
7. Birds do sing.
8. He does often help me.
9. Boys do make a noise.
10. I did go there.
11. She did read.
12. He did play tennis.
13. She did steal my pen.
14. He did go fishing.
15. She did go shopping.
16. He did try to win the match.
17. I do have a car.
18. He does have the book.
19. She does have a golden ring.
20. You do have a radio.
21. I did have knowledge.
22. She did have faith.
23. I did have a car.
24. Do help her.
25. Do write your name here.

Non-emphatic

1. I believe in God.
2. She believes in God.
3. You play tennis.
4. I read at night.
5. Jay plays cricket.
6. He wants to read.
7. Birds sing.
8. He often helps me.
9. Boys make a noise.
10. I went there.
11. She read.
12. He played tennis.
13. She stole my pen.
14. He went fishing.
15. She went shopping.
16. He tried to win the match.
17. I have a car.
18. He has the book.
19. She has a golden ring.
20. You have a radio.
21. I had knowledge.
22. She had faith.
23. I had a car.
24. Help her.
25. Write your name here.

EXERCISE

Make the following sentences emphatic-

1. I read.
2. he reads.
3. I know Mohan.
4. He plays cricket.
5. You make a noise.
6. he speaks the truth.
7. She tells a lie.
8. She likes fish.
9. We love you.
10. He believes in God.
11. Heera knows the fact.
12. I wrote him a letter.
13. She stole my purse.
14. he won the match.
15. The peon rang the bell.
16. He went fishing.
17. He laughed at me.
18. She helped the poor.
19. He tried his best.
20. he wanted to save you.
21. He tried to succeed.
22. She told me a story.
23. He taught me English.
24. I have a car.
25. She has a ring.
26. I have a black coat.
27. She has beauty.
28. They have books.
29. I had a bicycle.
30. She had a bicycle.
31. he had faith in God.
32. We had a radio.

EXERCISE 35

Make the following sentences non-emphatic-

1. I do help the poor.
2. He does help the poor.
3. She does want to marry Mohan.
4. You do respect your elders.
5. He does like fish.
6. I did see her yesterday.
7. He did lose his purse.
8. She did laugh at me.
9. The girl did dance well.
10. I did go dishing.
11. She did go shopping.
12. He did try to win.
13. I do have faith in God.
14. He does have faith in God.
15. She does have a car.
16. I do have a horse.
17. He does have an elephant.
18. We do have friends.
19. The farmer did have a dog.
20. I did have a gun.
21. She did have a golden ring.
22. Do begin the work at once.
23. Do try to help her.
24. Please do make tea for me.
25. Do tell me a story, please.
26. Do have patience.
27. Do have a rest now.
28. Do have a cup of tea.
29. Please do have coffee.
30. He did look at me.
31. he does have peace.
32. He did tell a lie.

Interchange of Affirmative and Negative Sentences

Affirmative Sentence को Negative Sentence में तथा Negative Sentence को Affirmative Sentence में transform किया जा सकता है। Transformation की प्रक्रिया समझने के पहले आप यह जान ले कि Affirmative Sentence तथा Negative Sentence में एक विशेष अंतर क्या है।

Affirmative Sentence में कोई भी negative word प्रयुक्त नहीं रहता है, जबकि Negative Sentence में negative word का रहना आवश्यक होता है। निम्नलिखित प्रमुख negative words हैं not, no, none, never, nobody, nothing, neither, nor.

Affirmative Sentence Negative Sentence Transform के लिए यह आवश्यक है कि वाक्य में इस प्रकार का परिवर्तन लाया जाए, जिससे वाक्य में एक negative word आ जाए और वाक्य के अर्थ / भाव में परिवर्तन भी न हो। इसी प्रकार Negative Sentence को Affirmative Sentence में transform करने के लिए यह आवश्यक है कि वाक्य में इस प्रकार का परिवर्तन लाया जाए, जिससे वाक्य में प्रयुक्त negative word का लोप हो जाए और वाक्य के अर्थ/ भाव में परिवर्तन न हो। इस प्रकार के Interchanging के लिए कुछ उपाय बताए जा रहे हैं, जिन्हें ध्यान से पढ़ें और समझें:

1. वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त प्रमुख शब्द (key-word) के antonym की सहायता से Affirmative को Negative में तथा Negative को Affirmative में बदला जा सकता है। जैसे

Affirmative

She is wise.
This knife is sharp.
My friend is a rich man.
This is impossible.
She is innocent.
I am always right.
I dislike her.
He is a clever man.
I am doubtful.
He is sometimes careless.
Man is mortal.
She is always happy.
I shall remember your kindness.

Negative

She is not foolish.
This knife is not blunt.
My friend is not a poor man.
This is not possible.
She is not guilty.
I am never wrong.
I don't like her.
He is no fool.
I am not sure.
He is not always careful.
Man is not immortal.
She is never unhappy.
I shall not forget your kindness.

2. Affirmative Sentence a Negative Sentence transform के लिए कभी-कभी दो negative sense वाले words का प्रयोग किया जाता है और ठीक इसके विपरीत प्रक्रिया द्वारा Negative Sentence को Affirmative Sentence में transform किया जाता है। जैसे

Affirmative	Negative
She loves you.	She is not without love for you.
I am hopeful.	I am not without hope.
He is wise.	He is not without wisdom.
Everyone loves you.	There is no one who does not love you.
Every rose has a thorn.	There is no rose without a thorn.
He tried every plan.	He left no plan untried.

Negative	Affirmative
Brutus was not without love for Caesar.	Brutus loved Caesar.
He is not without money.	He has money.
There is no gain without risk.	Every gain has risk.
There is no boy who is not playing.	All the boys are playing.

3. Verb "to fail" का प्रयोग कर लोप कर कुछ वाक्यों का transformation किया जाता है, जैसे

Affirmative	Negative
I saw the Red fort.	I did not fail to see the Red Fort.
I played the game.	I did not fail to play the game.
He went to Agra.	When he went to Agra.

4. Affirmative Sentences only/alone none but, as soon as a no sooner than a whenever/when a never but में परिवर्तित कर Negative Sentences बनाए जाते हैं। ठीक इसके fata none but only/alone ,no sooner... than as soon as में तथा never but को whenever/when में परिवर्तित कर Negative Sentences को Affirmative Sentences में परिवर्तित किया जाता है। संक्षेप में इसे ध्यान में रखें

Affirmative	Negative
Only the rich can buy this car.	None but the rich can buy this car.
Only a fool would behave like this.	None but a fool would behave like this.
Only Mohit came to see me.	None but Mohit came to see me.
Only graduates need apply.	None but graduates need apply.

Negative	Affirmative
None but a child could talk like this.	Only a child could talk like this.
None but Jay can do it.	Only Jay can do it.
None but the brave deserves the fair.	Only the brave deserve the fair.
It never rains but pours.	It always pours when it rains.

Note: "None but the brave deserves the fair." d fa Dryden की उक्ति है। इस वाक्य में आप चाहें तो deserves के बदले deserve दे सकते हैं। यहाँ वाक्य का Subject. None है the brave नहीं। Subject के रूप में जब None का प्रयोग Countable Noun के संदर्भ में होता है, तब इसके साथ Singular और Plural दोनों में से कोई भी Verb का प्रयोग हो सकता है।

5. कुछ वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त adjectives/adverbs के Degrees of Comparison में परिवर्तन लाकर Affirmative Sentences को Negative में तथा Negative Sentences को Affirmative में transform किया जा सकता है।

6. Miscellaneous Examples: कुछ Sentences ऐसे हैं, जिनका interchanging किसी खास नियम से नहीं हो पाता है। ऐसे वाक्यों के अर्थ / भाव समझ कर उपयुक्त word/phrase की सहायता से Affirmative को Negative में तथा Negative को Affirmative में Transform करें। जैसे

Affirmative Jay is as good as Mohan. Sita is more beautiful than Geeta. Geeta is not as beautiful as Sita.	Negative Mohan is not better than Jay. Geeta is not as beautiful as Sita.
Negative Ravi is not as rich as Raj. He is not wiser than you.	Affirmative Raj is richer than Ravi. You are as wise as he.

7. Miscellaneous Examples: कुछ Sentences ऐसे हैं, जिनका interchanging किसी खास नियम से नहीं हो पाता है। ऐसे वाक्यों के अर्थ/भाव समझ कर उपयुक्त word/ phrase की सहायता से Affirmative को Negative में तथा Negative को Affirmative में Transform करें। जैसे-

Affirmative

My brother is a good singer.
He is a man of marked intelligence.
He abstains from wine.
He went to school everyday.
It is unique.

Negative

My brother is no mean singer.
He is a man of no mean intelligence.
He does not take wine.
He never absented himself from school.
Nothing is like this.

EXERCISE

Turn the following sentences into the negative without altering the sense-

1. My friend is wise.
2. This is possible.
3. I shall always remember your help.
4. She is always careful.
5. An honest man is always right.
6. Mrs Sinha's voice is sweet.
7. Everyone dislikes her.
8. Man is mortal.
9. This boy is dull.
10. They are innocent.
11. You have always distrusted me.
12. I am always present.
13. We won the match.
14. I always treat her fairly.
15. My knife is sharp.

16. Everyone was hopeful.
17. He is a bad man.
18. I was doubtful whether it was his.
19. Everybody will admit that he did his best.
20. He is honest.
21. You are sometimes foolish.
22. My friend is a poor man.
23. Always speak the truth.
24. He is always happy.
25. Every gain has risk.
26. His behaviour was decent.
27. Everyone makes mistakes.
28. Every rose has a thorn.
29. Everyone present there cheered.
30. Where there is smoke, there is fire.
31. Brutus loved Caesar.
32. He finished everything.
33. Everyone who was present there praised his speech.
34. They had money.
35. I love her.
36. She beat everybody.
37. Every problem can be solved.
38. I saw the Red Fort.
39. He failed to keep his word.
40. He failed to appear at the examination.
41. He failed to notice me when I came in.
42. I thanked him for his help..
43. Work hard.
44. He came in time.
45. He must have seen the Red Fort when he went to Delhi.

EXERCISE

Transform the following into negative sentences-

1. As soon as the thief saw the police, he ran away.
2. As soon as he approached the place, he was arrested.
3. As soon as the teacher entered the room, everybody was silent.
4. As soon as he saw the tiger, he fled.
5. As soon as I went out, it began to rain.
6. As soon as the bell rang, the boys went to their classes.
7. Only a little child could talk like this.
8. Only Ravi came to see me.
9. The brave alone deserve the fair.
10. Only a millionaire can afford such extravagance.
11. only Suresh can do this.
12. Only a coward would flee from his day.
13. Only the evening star has yet appeared.
14. Only a fool would behave in such a way.
15. The poor alone deserve help.
16. It always pours when it rains.
17. Whenever I see him I am reminded of my brother.
18. Only graduates need apply.
19. as soon as he saw a bear approaching, he climbed up a tree.
20. I am as tall as you.
21. He is as tall as his elder brother.
22. Ravi is more intelligent than his brother.
23. Shakespeare is the greatest English dramatist.
24. Mumbai is bigger than any other town in India.
25. He can do as well as his brother.
26. I know this place as well as you do.
27. Iron is the most useful of all metals.
28. She is too proud to beg.
29. The tree is too high for me to climb.
30. My father is too weak to walk.
31. I lived only a few years in Bihar.
32. Only a few women can keep a secret.

EXERCISE

Change the following into affirmative sentences without altering the sense-

1. He is never sure.
2. Your conduct is not decent.
3. This is not reliable.
4. He was not kind.
5. It is not wise to waste money.
6. He is not alive to the faults of his son.
7. No one is always careful.
8. No one will deny it.
9. I shall never forget it.
10. God is not mortal.
11. he is no fool.
12. She is not guilty.
13. She did not disbelieve me.
14. Brutus was not without love for Caesar.
15. There is no one who will not die one day.
16. Old man are not always wise.
17. There was no one present who did not shed tears at his death.
18. I am not without money.
19. She is not without hope.
20. There is no rose without a thorn.
21. She did not fail to catch the ball.
22. None but a fool would behave like that.
23. None but she can do it.
24. None but the rich can travel by aeroplane.
25. None but Mohit will solve it.
26. No sooner had they heard the bell than they ran outside.
27. No sooner had he seen the tiger than he fled.
28. No sooner did I enter the hall than the lecture began.
29. No sooner did I got out than it began to rain.
30. He is no mean man.
31. He does not lead a happy life.
32. There is no man who has no failings.

Removal of 'Too'

इन वाक्यों पर विचार करें

1. He is too weak to walk.

वह इतना कमजोर है कि नहीं टहल सकता है।

2. The sun is too hot to go out at present.

धूप इतनी तेज है कि कोई भी इस समय बाहर नहीं निकल सकता है।

3. He is too dull for a sportsman.

यह इतना सुस्त है कि वह एक खिलाड़ी नहीं हो सकता है।

4. The tea is too hot.

चाय उचित से ज्यादा गर्म है। चाय जितनी गर्म रहनी चाहिए उससे यह ज्यादा गर्म है।

5. It is too much for me.

यह इतना बुरा (धक्का पहुँचानेवाला) है कि मैं इसे बर्दाश्त नहीं कर सकता हूँ।

6. He is too eager for praise.

वह प्रशंसा के लिए अत्यधिक (over) अधीर है।

ऐसे वाक्यों में 'too' का प्रयोग किसी गुण या दोष की अतिशयता (उचित से अधिक, excess) का भाव व्यक्त करने के लिए होता है। ऐसे वाक्यों के अर्थ/भाव में परिवर्तन किए बिना वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त too को हटाया जा सकता है। नीचे different groups में कुछ worked out examples दिए जा रहे हैं, जिनका गंभीरता से अध्ययन कर transformation की प्रक्रिया को समझें

He is	Too	Weak	To walk.
He is	So	weak	That he cannot

1. Sita is too slow to win the race.

Sita is so slow that she cannot win the race.

(Sita is so slow that she will not win the race.)

2. He is too old to learn new tricks.

He is so old that he cannot learn new tricks.

(He is so old that he will not learn new tricks.)

3. He is too upright to accept a bribe.
He is so upright that he cannot accept a bribe.
(He is so upright that he does not accept a bribe.)
(He is so upright that he will not accept a bribe.)
4. He was too late to hear the first speech.
He was so late that he could not hear the first speech.
(He was so late that he did not hear the first speech.)
5. I was too weak to play.
I was so weak that I could not play.
6. She is too shy to ask for help.
She is so shy that she cannot ask for help.
(She is so shy that she will not ask for help.)
7. The boys were too tired to get back.
The boys were so tired that they could not get back.
(The boys were so tired that they did not get back.)
8. The news is too good to be true.
The news is so good that it cannot be true.
(The news is so good that it does not seem to be true.)
9. They are too selfish to be true friends.
They are so selfish that they cannot be understood.
10. She speaks too fast to be understood.
She speaks so fast that she cannot be understood.
11. The sun is too hot for us to go out at present.
The sun is so hot that we cannot go out at present.
12. The tree is too high for me to climb.
The tree is so high that I cannot climb it.
13. Mount Everest is too high for one to climb.
Mount Everest is so high that one cannot climb it.

The mountain was	Too high	To climb.
The mountain was	So high	That one could not climb it.
The mountain was	So high	That no one could climb it.

14. The tree is too high to climb.

The tree is so high that one cannot climb it.

(The tree is so high that no one can climb it.)

15. The sun is too hot to go out.

The sun is so hot that one cannot go out.

16. The sight was too dreadful to be seen.

The sight was so dreadful that one could not see it.

(The sight was so dreadful that it was not fit to be seen.)

17. It is never too late to mend.

It is never so late that one cannot mend oneself.

(It is better to mend even at a late hour than never to mend at all.)

He is	too	dull	For a sportsman.
He is	so	dull	That he cannot be a sportsman.

18. He is too slow for a runner.

He is so slow that he cannot be a runner.

19. He is too ignorant for a watchman.

He is so ignorant that he cannot be a watchman.

[D]

20. The fact is too evident to require proof.

The fact is so evident that it does not require proof.

(The fact is self-evident.)

21. She was too much distressed to be able to speak.

She was so much distressed that she was not able to speak.

22. The results were too bad to be published.

The results were so bad that they were not fit to be published.

23. The fruit is too unripe to be eaten.

The fruit is so unripe that it is not worth eating.

24. His conduct is too bad to mend.

His conduct is so bad that it cannot be mended.

25. It is too early to start the work.

It is so early that we need not start the work now.

26. It is too much for me.

It is so bad that I cannot bear it.

27. The sun is too hot for the baby.

The sun is so hot that the baby cannot bear it.

28. The tea is too hot for me.

The tea is so hot that I cannot take it.

29. He is too old for the job.

He is so old that he is not fit for the job.

30. He is too stupid for such a post.

He is so stupid that he is not fit for such a post.

She is too intelligent She is so intelligent	Not to understand it. That she will understand it.
---	---

41. He is too kind-hearted not to forgive me.

He is so kind-hearted that he will forgive me.

42. He is too merciful not to take pity on the poor and the needy.

He is so merciful that he takes pity on the poor and the needy.

43. His speech was too impressive not to impress the audience.

His speech was so impressive that it impressed the audience.

44. The house is too large that it can accommodate all of us.

The house is so large that it can accommodate all of us.

45. Jesus Christ was too kind-hearted not to love even his enemies.

Jesus Christ was so kind-hearted that he loved even his enemies.

46. She is too clever not to understand the tricks.

She is so clever that she will understand the tricks.

The tea is The tea is The tea is	Too hot. hotter hotter	Than it is proper. Than it should be.
--	------------------------------	--

47. He is too weak.

He is weaker than it is proper.

He is weaker than he should be.

48. Ravi is too negligent.

Ravi is more negligent than it is proper.

Ravi is more negligent than he should be.

49. Sita is too dull.

Sita is duller than it is proper.

Sita is duller than she should be.

50. He runs too fast.

He runs faster than it is proper.

He runs faster than he should.

51. She was too stupid.

She was more stupid than it was proper.

She was more stupid than she should have been.

52. He came too early.

He came earlier than he should have.

54. He is too eager for praise.

He is over eager for praise.

55. Too many cooks spoil the broth.

Cooks beyond a proper limit will spoil the broth.

56. He is too attentive.

He is over attentive.

57. I ate too much.

I ate more than enough.

58. He is being too kind.

He is being extremely kind.

Exercises

Remove 'too' from the following sentences without altering their sense-

1. He is too weak to play.
2. Sita is too fat to dance.
3. The boys are too tired to work.
4. She is too proud to beg.
5. She is too shy to ask for help.
6. We are too poor to keep a servant.
7. He was too proud to learn.
8. My son was too weak to play.
9. You are too lazy to work.
10. She was too frightened to speak a word.
11. He was too late to hear the speech.
12. The news is too good to be true.
13. She is too talkative to be silent.
14. He is too strong to be beaten.

EXERCISE

Remove 'too' from the following sentences without altering their sense-

1. The fact is too evident to require proof.
2. He was too much distressed to be able to utter a single word.
3. The results were too bad to be published.
4. The sight was too dreadful to be seen.
5. The mango is too unripe to be eaten.
6. The news is too much for me.
7. The tea is too hot for me.
8. The milk is too hot for me.
9. The house is too small for me.
10. The sun is too hot for me.
11. He is too strong for me.
12. The room is too small for us.
13. The work is too difficult for me.
14. The bride is too young for the man.
15. My pain is too deep for words.
16. You are too late for the train.
17. His heart is too full for words.
18. He is too young for the job.
19. He is too stupid for such a difficult post.
20. He is too ignorant for a postman.
21. She was too deeply affected to speak.
22. She was weeping too bitterly to make any answer.
23. The load is too heavy for any man to lift it single-handed.
24. The box was too heavy to be lifted.
25. The problem is not too difficult for him to solve.
26. His conduct is too bad to mend.
27. The room is too small for us to live in.
28. She is too eager for praise.
29. She was too attentive.
30. They are being too kind.
31. Too many cooks spoil the broth.
32. He has helped her too much.

EXERCISE 46

Rewrite the following sentences using the adverb 'too'-

Example: He is so lazy that he cannot work.

He is too lazy to work.

1. She is so proud that she cannot beg.
2. I am so tired that I cannot work.
3. He is so upright that he will not accept a bride.
4. He was so weak that he could not play.
5. The rod is so strong that it cannot be broken.
6. He speaks so fast that he cannot be understood.
7. The scene was so horrible that it could not be seen.
8. He is so old that he cannot be employed.
9. The girl was so shy that she could not ask for help.
10. He was so late that he did not catch the train.
11. I was so tired that I did not do that work.
12. The news is so good that it cannot be true.
13. He is so selfish that he cannot be a saint.
14. The sun is so hot that we cannot go out.
15. The wall is so high that I cannot jump it.
16. The sight was so dreadful that it was not fit to be seen.
17. It is so cold that one cannot go out.
18. He is so stupid that he cannot be a detective.
19. He is so weak that he will not be a wrestler.
20. The tea is hotter than it should be.
21. She is weaker than she should be.
22. He runs more slowly than he should.
23. He came earlier than he should have.
24. The fact is so evident that it does not require proof.
25. His conduct is so bad that it cannot be mended.
26. It is so bad that I cannot bear it.
27. The tea is so hot that I cannot take it.
28. He is so young that he is not fit for the post.
29. She was weeping so bitterly that she was not able to utter a single word.
30. One should not be over eager for praise.

The Clause & The Complex Sentence

1. Clause को अच्छी तरह समझने के लिए हम एक वाक्य लें

I met a man who was blind. इस वाक्य को हम दो शब्द-समूहों में इस प्रकार बाँट सकते हैं

(a) I met a man (b) Who was blind.

यहाँ हम देख रहे हैं कि प्रत्येक शब्द समूह में एक Subject और एक Finite Verb है। परंतु इसके बावजूद हम अभीष्ट वाक्य को प्रकार नहीं लिख सकते हैं। I met a man. Who was blind. स्पष्टतः ये शब्द समूह अलग-अलग वाक्य नहीं हैं। ये एक ही वाक्य के parts हैं। इनमें से प्रत्येक को Clause कहा जाएगा। अर्थात् हम Clause की परिभाषा इस प्रकार दे सकते हैं Clause वैसे शब्द समूह को कहा जाता है, जो किसी वाक्य का अंश हो और जिसमें एक Subject और एक Finite Verb हो। (A clause is a group of words which forms part of a sentence and contains a subject and a finite verb of its own.)

अब इन वाक्यों में निहित clauses को देखें

(a) you will pass if you work hard.

You will pass

If you work hard

(b) If he comes to me I shall help him.

If he comes to me

I shall help him

(c) He was absent because he was ill.

He was absent

Because he was ill

(d) She wept when she heard the news.

She wept

When she heard the news.

(e) The book that is on the table is mine.

The book is mine

That is on the table

(f) Tell me why you did this.

(You) tell me

Why you did this

(g) He is better than Ravi.

He is better

Than Ravi (is)

(h) He lifted the gun, took aim and fired.

He lifted the gun

He took aim

He fired

(i) He was playing and she was dancing.

He was playing

He was dancing

(j) He writes as fast as possible.

He writes

As fast as possible

(k) Though badly defeated, he did not leave the field.

Though badly defeated

He did not leave the field

(l) He as well as I is to blame.

He is to blame

I am to blame

(m) He came and gave me the book.

He came

He gave me the book

Note: ऊपर दिए गए उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है कि किसी-किसी Clause का Subject या Verb या दोनों understood भी रह सकता है।

2. Clause दो प्रकार के होते हैं (a) Principal Clause/Main Clause/Independent Clause

(b) Subordinate Clause/Dependent Clause

(a) Principal Clause: यह Clause जो किसी अन्य Clause पर निर्भर हुए बिना पूर्ण अर्थ व्यक्त करता है, Principal Clause कहलाता है। "I saw a man who was blind" I saw a man' Principal Clause है।

(b) Subordinate Clause: वह Clause जो अपने अर्थ की पूर्णता के लिए Principal Clause या अन्य clause पर आश्रित रहता है. Subordinate Clause कहलाता है। "I saw a man who was blind (मैंने एक आदमी को देखा जो अंधा था) में who was blind (जो अंधा था) एक Subordinate clause है।

Note: चूंकि Principal Clause पूर्ण अर्थ व्यक्त करता है इसलिए इसका प्रयोग स्वतंत्र वाक्य के रूप में भी हो सकता है। जैसे - "I saw a man" एक स्वतंत्र वाक्य भी है।

Solved Examples

Put out the principal clauses and the subordinate clauses in the following sentences-

1. I lost all that I had.
2. Wait till I return.
3. If you go there, you will find him.
4. All that glitters is not gold.
5. God helps those who help themselves.
6. The boy who played best won the prize.
7. There is truth in what you say.
8. He writes as fast as possible.
9. Do you know where she lives and what she does?
10. The book I bought yesterday is very interesting.

Answers:

1. I lost all - Principal Clause
That I had - Subordinate Clause
2. (You) wait - P.C.
Till I return - S.C.

3. You will find him - P.C.
If you go there - S.C.
4. All is not gold - P.C.
That glitters - S.C.
5. God helps those - P.C.
Who help themselves - S.C.
6. The boy won the prize - P.C.
Who played best - S.C.
7. There is truth in - P.C.
What you say - S.C.
8. He writes - P.C.
As fast as possible - S.C.
9. Do you know - P.C.
Where she lives - S.C.
What she does - S.C.
10. The book is very interesting - P.C.
I bought yesterday - S.C.

Examples

Pick out the principal clauses and the subordinate clauses in the following sentences

1. All the blessings that we enjoy come from god.
2. The reason why he beat him is not clear.
3. I shall remain where I am.
4. They also serve who only stand and wait.
5. this is the forest where lions live.
6. The boy who is playing there is my son.
7. He that rises too high is sure to fall.
8. I don't know who he is.

3. Subordinate Clause तीन प्रकार के होते हैं.

(A) Noun Clause

(B) Adjective Clause

(C) Adverb Clause

अब इन तीनों को अलग-अलग विस्तारपूर्वक समझें

(A) Noun Clause: जो Clause वाक्य में Noun के जैसा काम करता है, वह Noun Clause कहलाता है। Noun Clause को समझने के लिए इन दो वाक्यों पर विचार करें -

I know the man..

I know who he is.

यहाँ दूसरे वाक्य में निहित Clause who he is' वही काम कर रहा है, जो प्रथम वाक्य में the man (Noun) कर रहा है। अतः यहाँ 'who he is' एक Noun Clause है। स्पष्टतः यदि कोई Clause उस जगह पर प्रयुक्त है, जहाँ किसी Noun या Noun Phrase को रहना चाहिए, तो वह Clause, Noun Clause कहलाएगा। निम्नलिखित वाक्यों को समझें -

1. (a) The amount is not known to me. Noun

(b) What he paid is not known to me. Noun Clause

2.

(a) There is no meaning in your statement.

Noun Phrase

(b) There is no meaning in what you say. Noun Clause

चूँकि Noun Clause किसी Complex Sentence में Noun के जैसा काम करता है इसलिए इसका प्रयोग उन सभी प्रकारों से हो सकता है, जिस प्रकार से एक Noun का होता है -

(a) Main Verb के Subject के रूप में

What you say is true.

That he is honest is doubtful.

Whether she will come is not known.

What cannot be cured must be endured.

Whatever could be done is done.

How he could assist his friend was his chief concern. ऊपर Noun Clauses को मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित किया गया है। ये क्रमशः Main Verbs is, is, is, must be, is तथा was के Subject के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

(b) Transitive Verb के Object के रूप में

I do not know who he is. Tell me what you do.

I hope that it will rain today. Father asked me why I was late.

She knows what you like. I hoped that it was true.

ऊपर Noun Clauses को मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित किया गया है। ये क्रमशः Transitive Verbs know, tell, hope, ask, know तथा hope के बाद उनके Object के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

(c) Preposition के Object के रूप में

There is no truth in what you say. Pay attention to what your teacher says,

Never rely on what a liar says.

She is ashamed of what she said.

Success depends on how you work.

ऊपर Noun Clauses को मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित किया गया है। ये सभी अपने पहले आनेवाले Prepositions के Object के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

(d) Verb के complement के रूप में

Life is what we make of it.

The truth is that we have been fools. Our belief is that we shall succeed one day.

Things are not what they seem.

This is where I live.

His great fear is that he will die one day. यहाँ Noun Clauses को bold letters से दर्शाया गया है। ये सभी complement के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

(e) Noun या Pronoun के apposition के रूप में

Your statement that you are not guilty will not be believed.

It was unfortunate that you were absent.

It is a miracle that she was not drowned.

The news that he has resigned is true.

It is bad that you should say so.

यहाँ पुनः Noun Clauses को bold type से दर्शाया गया है। ये क्रमशः statement,

unfortunate miracle, news तथा bad के meaning को स्पष्ट करने के लिए apposition के रूप में प्रयुक्त हुए हैं।

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि 'Noun Clause Noun / Noun Phrase के बदले में प्रयुक्त होता है।

(B) Adjective Clause: जो Clause वाक्य में Adjective के जैसा काम करता है, Adjective Clause कहलाता है। इस प्रकार Adjective Clause Main Clause में प्रयुक्त Noun या Pronoun को qualify करता है। जैसे

The boy who is playing there is my friend.

Adjective Clause

Main Clause "The boy is my friend" a Subordinate Clause "who is playing there" है। स्पष्टतः "who is playing there Adjective Clause है क्योंकि यह boy को qualify कर रहा है। कौन लड़का जो वहाँ खेल रहा है who is playing there is

इन वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखें इनमें प्रयुक्त Adjective Clauses को bold letters में print किया गया है

This is the pen that I bought yesterday.

This is the man whom we all love.

The place where he lives is unknown.

The dog that barks does not bite.

Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.

They never fail who die in a great cause.

He laughs best who laughs last.

The reason why he did it is obvious.

ऊपर के वाक्यों में Adjective Clauses क्रमशः pen, man, place, dog. head. they, he reason तथा watch को qualify करते हैं। Note: f Adjective Clause Relative Pronouns (who, whom. whose, which and that) या Relative Adverbs (what, when, where and why) से शुरू होते हैं, इसलिए इन्हें Relative Clauses भी कहते हैं। वैसे Relative Clause की परिभाषा इस प्रकार दी जा सकती है

जो Subordinate Clause अपने पूर्व आनेवाले Noun या Pronoun को qualify करता है, वह Relative Clause कहलाता है।

(C) Adverb Clause: जो Clause वाक्य में Adverb के जैसा काम करता है, Adverb Clause कहलाता है। इस प्रकार Adverb Clause Principal Clause में प्रयुक्त Verb, Adjective या Adverb के अर्थ में विशेषता बढ़ाने का काम करता है। इन वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखें -

I shall stay here.

I shall stay where I am.

यहाँ दूसरे वाक्य में निहित Clause 'where I am' वही काम कर रहा है, जो प्रथम वाक्य में 'here (adverb)' कर रहा है। कहाँ stay करूंगा here – where I am. इसलिए यहाँ 'where I am' एक Adverb Clause है।

इन वाक्यों को ध्यान से देखें। इनमें प्रयुक्त Adverb Clauses को bold letters में print किया गया है

I shall wait till he returns.

You will pass if you work hard.

You may sit wherever you like.

He was not so rich that he could buy a car.

When he entered the room, he saw a snake.

I am kind to you because you are kind to me. He ran so fast that I could not catch him.

यहाँ दिए गए वाक्यों में Adverb Clauses क्रमशः wait (v.), pass (v.), sit (v.), rich (adj.), saw (v.), kind (adj.) arm fast (adv.) a fasuar and Adverb Clause के निम्नलिखित प्रमुख भेद हैं

(a) Adverb Clauses of Time or Time Clauses-Adverb Clauses of Time से समय का बोध होता है। नीचे मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Time -

I met him when I was in London. He came in when I was sleeping.

I went home after I had finished the work.

Make hay while the sun shines. You should wait till he returns.

Wait here as long as you can. I shall go when he comes.

Do it before you forget.

As soon as I heard the news, I wrote to him. When the cat is away, the mice will play.

(b) Adverb Clauses of Place-Adverb Clauses of Place स्थान का बोध होता है। नीचे मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Place - You can go wherever you like.

We must stay where we are.

I will live where you live.

(c) Adverb Clauses of Purpose इनसे किसी कार्य व्यापार के उद्देश्य का बोध होता है।

नीचे मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Purpose -

We eat that we may live.

Walk fast lest you should miss the train.

Misers save in order that they may grow rich. He works hard so that he may pass the examination. He drew his sword that he might defend himself.

(d) Adverb Clauses of Reason or Cause - है कि Principal Clause में जिस कार्य व्यापार का वर्णन है, उसका कारण क्या

है। नीचे मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Reason or Cause -

I am glad that you have come.

As you are over fourteen, you will have to pay full fare.

Because I like you, I shall help you.

Since you have no money, you cannot enjoy your life.

I did it because I wanted to.

Since the man was ill, he could not come.

As he was not there, I spoke to his My father was glad that I passed the examination.

Since you say so I believe it.

(e) Adverb Clauses of Condition (Conditional Clauses) कुछ वाक्य ऐसे होते हैं

जिनके एक भाग से शर्त (condition) तथा दूसरे भाग से परिणाम का बोध होता है। जिस

Clause से शर्त का बोध होता है उसे Adverb Clause of Condition कहते हैं। नीचे मोटे

अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Condition -

If a student does wrong at Netarhat School, he is punished by senior students. Unless you work hard, you cannot get good marks.

Write to me in case you need money.

A servant has to work whether he likes it or not.

Had he gone to Agra, he would have seen the Tajmahal.

You may stay here so long as you behave well.

(f) Adverb Clauses of Result or Effect - Principal Clause वर्णित कार्य व्यापार या स्थिति जो फल या परिणाम देती है, उसे व्यक्त करनेवाला Clause Adverb Clause of Result or Effect कहलाता है। नीचे मोटे अक्षरों Clauses Adverb Clauses of Result or Effect

He worked so hard that he won the prize.

He is so poor that he cannot buy all the books.

The box is so heavy that I cannot lift it.

The class was so noisy that nothing could be heard.

He spoke in such a way that I understood him.

He is such a good boy that all love him.

So good a teacher is he that all respect him.

So cold was it that many died.

She is so beautiful that she attracts everybody,

(g) Adverb Clauses of Comparison-Clauses 1 comparison के लिए किया जाता है, जैसा कि नीचे दिए गए उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है

Ram is as rich as Shyam (is).

She is older than she looks.

I love him as much as you do.

It is as long as it is broad.

I eat as much as you do.

(h) Adverb Clauses of Manner- Clauses Principal Clauses में वर्णित कार्य व्यापार के होने के manner (तरीका, ढंग) को व्यक्त करते हैं। इन्हें यहाँ मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित किया जा रहा है -

He talked as if he were mad.

You will reap as you sow.

Do as you please.

It all ended as I expected.

He behaves as if he were my boss.

He answered the question as he was taught.

You may do as you like.

You should do as I tell you.

Leave it as it is.

(i) Adverb Clauses of Contrast-Clauses Principal Clauses के साथ विरोध (contrast) का बोध कराते हैं। नीचे मोटे अक्षरों में अंकित Clauses Adverb Clauses of Contrast -

Though he is poor, he is honest.

Though he is a little child, he is very intelligent.

Even if they oppose me, I must try..

Although he started late, he caught the train.

However hard he may work, he cannot stand first.

I will buy the book whatever it costs.

(j) Adverb Clauses of Proportion The higher we go, the cooler it is.

The more he has, the more he wants.

The more we eat, the fatter we become.

FLUENT SPOKEN ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Simple, Compound and Complex Sentences

1. Simple Sentence – जिस वाक्य में सिर्फ एक Finite Verb हो, वह Simple Sentence कहलाता है। जैसे

- (a) He is a boy..
- (b) Ram reads a book.
- (c) I went to Patna yesterday.
- (d) It is very cold today.

2. Compound Sentence वह वाक्य जो दो या दो से अधिक Independent Clauses से बना होता है, Compound Sentence कहलाता है। जैसे

- (a) Mohan was singing and Radha was dancing. both are Independent Clauses.

Mohan was singing

Radha was dancing

- (b) The night was dark and we did not know the way. The night was dark We did not know the way both oth are Independent Clauses.

- (c) He lifted the gun, took aim and fired.

He lifted the gun

He took aim

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि Compound Sentence में दो या दो से अधिक Finite Verbs रहते हैं और इसमें कोई Subordinate Clause नहीं होता।

3. Complex Sentence जिस वाक्य में एक Principal Clause और एक या एक से अधिक Subordinate Clauses हों, उसे Complex Sentence कहते हैं। जैसे

- (a) I know that he is a good man. I know

That he is a good man,

- (b) If he comes to me I shall help him.

If he comes to me

I shall help him.

- (c) When I asked him he told me that he would not help me.

He told me - P.C.

When I asked him S.C.

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि जहाँ Compound Sentence में कोई Subordinate Clause नहीं रहता है, वहीं Complex Sentence में Subordinate Clause का रहना आवश्यक होता है।

4. Mixed Sentence or Compound Complex Sentence- f वाक्य में दो या दो से अधिक Principal Clauses तथा एक या एक से अधिक Subordinate Clauses हों, उसे Mixed Sentence या Compound Complex Sentence कहते हैं। जैसे

(a) When the baby was kidnapped her father was sleeping and the mother was cooking.

Her father was sleeping

The mother was cooking

Two Principal Clauses

When the baby was kidnapped - S.C.

Each of these sentences has a subordinate clause, you have to say whether it is a noun clause or an adjective clause or an adverb clause

1. No one knows who he is.
2. Where she lives is unknown.
3. He says that he won't help me.
4. There is no meaning in what you say.
5. Do you know what he wants?
6. I know the place where the money was hidden.
7. He that is down need fear no fall.
8. People who live in glass houses should not throw stones at others.
9. The reason why he has come is clear.
10. This is the house that my father built.
11. You may sit wherever you like.
12. When I was younger, I thought so.
13. They returned when the sun set.
14. He talks as if he were a mad man.
15. He did it as I told him.

Answers:

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Who he is | - Noun Clause |
| 2. Where she lives | - Noun Clause |
| 3. That he won't help me | - Noun Clause |
| 4. What you say | - Noun Clause |
| 5. What he wants | - Noun Clause |
| 6. Where the money was hidden | - Adjective Clause |
| 7. That is down | - Adjective Clause |
| 8. Who live in glass houses | - Adjective Clause |
| 9. Why he has come | - Adjective Clause |
| 10. That my father built | - Adjective Clause |
| 11. Wherever you like | - Adjective Clause |
| 12. When I was younger | - Adjective Clause |
| 13. When the sun set | - Adjective Clause |
| 14. As if he were a mad man | - Adjective Clause |
| 15. As I told him | - adjective Clause |

Pick out relative clauses, time clauses and conditional clauses in the following sentences-

1. This is the book that I bought yesterday.
2. He who loves the poor is loved by God.
3. Is this the watch which you lost?
4. Unless you work hard you cannot get success.
5. If it rains we shall not go.
6. Write to me in case you need money.
7. You should wait till he returns.
8. When I was young, I could swim.
9. Do it before you forget.
10. Had he gone to Delhi, he would have seen the Red Fort.

Answers:

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. That I bought yesterday | - Relative Clause |
| 2. Who loves the poor | - Relative Clause |
| 3. Which you lost | - Relative Clause |
| 4. Unless you work hard | - Conditional Clause |
| 5. If it rains | - Conditional Clause |
| 6. in case you need money | - Conditional Clause |
| 7. Till he returns | - Time Clause |
| 8. When I was young | - Time Clause |
| 9. Before you forget | - Time Clause |
| 10. Had he gone to Delhi | - Conditional Clause |

Pick out the adverb clauses in the following sentences. Stating their kind-

1. Gandhiji was welcomed wherever he went.
2. He fled where no one could find him.
3. We eat that we may live.
4. I worked hard that I might get good marks.
5. I could not go to school because I was ill.
6. I am glad that you have come.
7. He worked so hard that he fell ill.
8. The wall is so high that a child can't climb it.
9. Gandhiji was as kind as he was wise.
10. She is younger than she looks.
11. However hard he may work, he will not pass.
12. Even if it rains, I shall go.
13. You may do as you please.
14. He ran as if he were frightened.
15. The higher we go, the cooler it is.

Answers:

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Wherever he went | - Adverb Clause of Place |
| 2. Where no one could find him | - Adverb Clause of Place |
| 3. That we may live | - Adverb Clause of Purpose |
| 4. That I might get good marks | - Adverb Clause of Purpose |
| 5. Because I was ill | - Adverb Clause of Reason |
| 6. That you have come | - Adverb Clause of Reason |
| 7. That he fell ill | - Adverb Clause of Result |
| 8. That a child can't climb it | - Adverb Clause of Result |
| 9. As he was wise | - Adverb Clause of Comparison |
| 10. Than she looks | - Adverb Clause of Comparison |
| 11. However hard he may work | - Adverb Clause of Contrast |
| 12. Even if it rains | - Adverb Clause of Contrast |
| 13. As you please | - Adverb Clause of Manner |
| 14. As if he were frightened | - Adverb Clause of Manner |
| 15. The higher we go | - Adverb Clause of Proportion |

Exercise

Each of the following sentences has a subordinate clause. You have to state whether it is a noun clause or an adverb clause or an adjective clause-

1. Here is the book that you want.
2. God helps those who help themselves.
3. I remember the house where I was born.
4. This is the book I am interested in.
5. People who live in glass houses should not throw stones at others.
6. All that glitters is not gold.
7. Those whom God loves die young.
8. We shall wait here until you come.

11. Strike while the iron is hot.
12. He does as he pleases.
13. He who loves the poor is loved by God.
14. We want cold drinks when it is hot.
15. While there is life, there is hope.
16. Servants that are honest are trusted.
17. When the cat is away, the mice will play.
18. We will leave as soon as we are ready.
19. I don't know who has come here.
20. I know that he is a fool.
21. Tell me what you want.
22. I think you are right.
23. The fact is that he is a fool.
24. That he told a lie is quite clear.
25. I don't believe in what you say.
26. He will object to what we do.
27. Do which will please everyone.
28. That the earth is round is known to me.
29. That you should cheat me hurts me.
30. Tell me which book is yours.

Exercise

Pick out relative clauses, time clauses and conditional clauses in the following sentences-

1. He that is down need fear no fall.
2. This is the boy who has broken the chair.
3. Uneasy lies the head that wears a crown.
4. The book which the teacher gave me is very useful.
5. Is this the watch which you lost?

6. The book that is in her hand is mine.
7. The moment which is lost is lost forever.
8. When the cat is away, the mice will play.
9. It is an ill-wind that blows nobody any good.
10. You should wait till he returns.
11. This is the boy that won the prize.
12. Don't count your chickens before they are hatched.
13. When I reached the station, the train had left.
14. Look before you leap.
15. As soon as I reached the station, the train started.
16. All that glitters is not gold.
17. He who loves the poor is loved by God.
18. I met her when I was in London.
19. He went to the hospital when he heard the news.
20. As the stream flows past Gangotri, the scenery changes.
21. The dog that barks does not bite.
22. This happens when we act without thinking.
23. Unless you work hard, you cannot get good marks.
24. I shall come provided I am free.
25. If I make a promise, I keep it.
26. You will miss the train unless you start at once.
27. Take an umbrella in case it rains.
28. If it rains, I shall not go.
29. Should you need my help, write to me at once.
30. If you help me I will do this.

Exercise

Pick out the adverb clauses in the following sentences, stating their function-

1. You may sit wherever you like.
2. They went where living was cheaper.
3. Can you live where there is no light?
4. I shall remain where I am.
5. He drew his sword that he might defend himself.
6. He works hard so that he may become rich.
7. I did it because I wanted to.
8. I am glad that you have done.
9. Because I love you, I shall marry you.
10. Since you have no money , you can't enjoy your life.
11. It was so cold that many died.
12. He worked so hard that he won a prize.
13. He is older than he looks.
14. She works no less than anybody else.
15. You must work harder than I do.
16. Do as you please.
17. He talked as if he were mad.
18. Although he is poor, he is honest.
19. Although he is a little child he is very intelligent.
20. The higher we go, the cooler it is.
21. He did it as I told him.
22. A glutton lives that he may eat.
23. We will leave as soon as we are ready.
24. you may do it when you are free.
25. If you are honest, you will be rewarded.

Voice

Voice: Voice किसी वाक्य में प्रयुक्त Verb का वह रूप है, जो यह दिखाता है कि या तो कर्ता कुछ करता है या स्वयं कर्ता पर ही कुछ घटित होता है।

इन वाक्यों को देखें

1. Ram is beating.

2. Ram is being beaten.

पहले वाक्य में कर्ता Ram है, जो क्रिया का संपादन कर रहा है किसी को पीट रहा है। अर्थात् Ram यानी कर्ता सक्रिय (active) है। इसलिए इस वाक्य में प्रयुक्त क्रिया is beating को Active Voice में होना समझा जाएगा। दूसरे वाक्य में भी कर्ता Ram ही है, परंतु यहाँ Ram पीट नहीं रहा है बल्कि खुद पीटा जा रहा है। अर्थात् कर्ता इस वाक्य में doer नहीं है सिर्फ receiver of the action है। स्पष्टतः यहाँ कर्ता निष्क्रिय (passive) है। इसलिए इस वाक्य में प्रयुक्त क्रिया is being beaten को Passive Voice में होना समझा जाएगा।

इस प्रकार यह स्पष्ट है कि Voice दो प्रकार के होते हैं

Active Voice of Passive Voice.

Active Voice: A verb is said to be in the active voice when its form shows that the person or thing denoted by the subject does something.

Passive Voice: A verb is said to be in the passive voice when its form shows that something is done to the person or thing denoted by the subject.

Note: वस्तुतः Voice Verb का होता है, परंतु sentence / clause में प्रयुक्त verb अगर Active Voice में रहता है, तो sentence/clause को भी Active Voice में होना समझा जाता है। अगर प्रयुक्त Verb Passive Voice में रहता है, तो sentence/clause को भी Passive Voice में होना समझा जाता है।

Use of Passive Voice

किसी वाक्य का construction Active Voice में हो या Passive Voice में इसका निर्णय इस बात पर निर्भर करता है कि हम किस पर ज्यादा जोर देना चाहते हैं या हम किससे ज्यादा interested हैं या किससे वाक्य को शुरू करना ज्यादा natural/proper/convincing-
doer of the action receiver of the action अगर doer of the action वस्तु

स्थिति को स्पष्ट करने के लिए ज्यादा महत्वपूर्ण है, तो Active Voice का प्रयोग होगा और अगर Verb activity/ object/receiver of the action ज्यादा महत्वपूर्ण है, तो Passive Voice का प्रयोग होगा।

अगर आप doer of the action का उल्लेख नहीं करना चाहते हो या doer of the action unknown/vague/common figure at, at Passive Construction ही ज्यादा उपयुक्त होगा।

इस प्रकार Passive Voice का प्रयोग होने पर doer of the action का importance कम हो जाता है या समाप्त ही हो जाता है। हमारा main interest receiver of the action तथा verb activity पर चला जाता है।

Passive Verb Form

किसी Active Verb को Passive में बदलने के लिए अभीष्ट Main Verb rticiple में बदलते हैं और उसके पहले Verb 'to be' का प्रयोग को उपयुक्त Number, Person तथा Tense में करते हैं।

Voice interchanging à 44 Active Verb Object Passive Verb का Subject बना दिया जाता है तथा Active Verb के Subject को Passive Verb का agent बना दिया जाता है। अगर यह agent वाक्य के अर्थ/भाव को स्पष्ट करने के लिए आवश्यक हुआ, तो इसे clause के अंत में by या अन्य उपयुक्त preposition लगाकर रख दिया जाता है, अन्यथा इसका लोप कर दिया जाता है।

Note 1. Active से Passive बनाते समय agent का प्रयोग तभी करें जब agent का प्रयोग वाक्य के अर्थ को स्पष्ट करने के लिए अत्यंत आवश्यक हो। इस संदर्भ में कुछ विद्वानों ने यहाँ तक सलाह दी है कि ऐसे वाक्यों को सिर्फ Active Voice में ही प्रयोग करें, जिनके Passive में agent का प्रयोग करना आवश्यक हो, क्योंकि अगर agent को दर्शाना वाक्य के अर्थ को स्पष्ट करने के लिए आवश्यक हैं, तो वैसे वाक्यों को Passive में लिखा ही क्यों जाए? परंतु आप इतना ही याद रखें कि जब Active Verb का Subject one, someone, somebody, nobody. people या अन्य vague noun/pronoun में से कोई एक हो, तो Passive Verb के साथ इनका लोप हो जाता है। कुछ वाक्यों में I. we you, they.. he, she, a man, a boy जैसे agent को भी आवश्यकतानुसार Passive Verb के साथ लोप कर दिया जाता है। अतः आप वाक्य के अर्थ को समझते हुए यह निर्णय लें कि अभीष्ट Passive

Sentence में agent का प्रयोग आवश्यक है या नहीं।

2. केवल Transitive Verb का ही Passive Voice होता है। अतः इन वाक्यों की क्रियाएँ Passive Voice में नहीं हैं।

He is gone.

He is come.

They are arrived.

Winter is come.

परंतु इन वाक्यों की क्रियाएँ Passive Voice में हैं

The chair is broken.

He is beaten.

इसलिए ऐसे वाक्यों के Verbs को Passive Voice में नहीं बदला जा सकता है, जो

Intransitive हैं। जैसे

I am going to school.

I read in class X.

He has gone to Patna.

They are good boys.

अब भिन्न-भिन्न Tenses के Active Verbs को Passive में बदलने की प्रक्रिया पर विचार करें -

1. Present Indefinite Tense

[Passive form: am/is/are + V³]

Active

He helps me.

I help you.

She teaches you.

We respect him.

People speak Hindi in Bihar.

We expect good news.

Passive

I am helped by him.

You are helped by me.

You are taught by her.

He is respected by us.

Hindi is spoken in Bihar.

Good news is expected.

2. Present Continuous Tense

[Passive form: am/is/are + being + V³]

Active

I am eating a mango.

They are singing songs.

They are repairing the bridge.

He is helping his mother.

They are discussing the matter.

Passive

A mango is being eaten by me.

Songs are being sung.

The bridge is being repaired.

His mother is being helped by him.

The matter is being discussed.

3. Present Perfect Tense

[Passive form: have/has + been + V³]

Active

I have finished the work.

He has beaten Ravi.

Her sister has cheated her.

Ravi has disturbed me.

Someone has stolen my pen.

He has always helped me.

Passive

The work has been finished by me.

Ravi has been beaten by him.

She has been cheated by her sister.

I have been disturbed by Ravi.

My pen has been stolen.

I have always been helped by him.

4. Present Perfect Continuous Tense

[Passive form: have / has + been + being + V³]

Active

They have been doing the research for years.

We have been digging the well for ten years.

Passive

The research has been being done for years.

The well has been being dug for ten years.

Exercise

Rewrite the following sentences so that the verbs will be in the passive voice -

1. I eat a mango.
2. I eat mangoes.
3. I love you.
4. You love me.
5. He teaches her.
6. She helps them.
7. We respect him.
8. Ravi teaches the boys.
9. I like it.
10. She sings a song.
11. I write a letter.
12. I am eating a mango.
13. They are helping you.
14. You are doing this.
15. He is driving a car.
16. The boys are playing cricket.
17. She is teaching us.
18. We are doing nothing.
19. They are repairing the road.
20. Mohan is helping her.
21. I am learning it.
22. He has eaten a mango.
23. I have killed two birds.
24. She has helped me.
25. I have done the work.

Solved Examples

1. Active: People speak English all over the world.

Passive: English is spoken all over the world.

2. Active: He has hurt his leg in an accident.
Passive: His leg has been hurt in an accident.
3. Active: People always admire this kind of activity.
Passive: This kind of activity is always admired.
4. Active: One uses milk for making curd and sweets.
Passive: Milk is used for making curd and sweets.
5. Active: We do not respect a dishonest man.
Passive: A dishonest man is not respected.
6. Active: They make these types of furniture.
Passive: These types of furniture are made by them.
7. Active: This boy always wins the prize.
Passive: The prize is always won by this boy.
8. Active: The author has written a special edition for children.
Passive: A special edition for children has been written.
9. Active: Scientists are making progress everyday in the world
of science.
Passive: Progress in the world of science is being made
everyday.
10. Active: They are cutting the old trees.
Passive: The old trees are being cut.
11. Active: Some people dress their children very badly.
Passive: Some children are very badly dressed.
12. Active: No one has ever beaten him at tennis.
Passive: He has never been beaten at tennis.
13. Active: People often take him for his brother.
Passive: he is often taken for his brother.
14. Active: He likes people to call him 'sir'.
Passive: He likes to be called 'sir'.

Exercise

Put the following into the passive voice.

1. People speak Hindi in Bihar.
2. We keep the butter here.
3. We expect good news.
4. Somebody has broken my glass.
5. Someone has stolen my pen.
6. Someone has left the bag in the garden.
7. No one has seen that mad man for ten days.
8. They are watching you.
9. Someone has broken the door of my house.
10. Everywhere people respect a learned man.
11. In our country we exploit the poor.
12. They are repairing the road.
13. Someone has picked my pocket.
14. We use this room only on some special occasions.
15. Everyone knows this very well.
16. No one has said anything about it.
17. We are doing nothing against you.
18. They praise Mohan for his honesty.
19. They have published the result.
20. They have already filled the vacancy.
21. Ravi has pushed the table into the corner.
22. They have killed that innocent child.
23. They make these types of furniture.
24. Four men have beaten him.
25. Shakespeare has written this poem.

5. Past Indefinite Tense

[Passive form: was / were + V³]

Active

I ate a mango.

I ate four mangoes.

The police arrested him.

Someone stole my pen.

The peon opened the gate.

She beat you.

Passive

A mango was eaten by me.

Four mangoes were eaten by me.

He was arrested.

My pen was stolen.

The gate was opened by the peon.

You were beaten by her.

6. Past Continuous Tense

[Passive form: was / were + being + V³]

Active

He was teaching me.

She was vexing him.

He was watching them.

Passive

I was being taught by him.

He was being vexed by her.

They were being watched by him.

7. Past Perfect Tense

[Passive form: had been + V³]

Active

I had written the letter.

I had informed the police.
me.

Somebody had stolen my umbrella. My umbrella had been stolen.

They had warned us again and again. We had been warned again and again.

Passive

The letter had been written by me.

The police had been informed by

8. Past Perfect Continuous Tense

[Passive form: had been being + V³]

Active : The police had been following him for years.

Passive : He had been being followed for years.

Exercise

Turn the following into the passive

1. I helped you.
2. You helped me.
3. She loved me.
4. I loved her.
5. He bought a car.
6. They ate mangoes.
7. Ravi killed a bird.
8. The peon rang the bell.
9. Our team won the match.
10. Mohan broke the glass.
11. He finished the work soon.
12. The police caught the thief.
13. Somebody broke my window.
14. Mohan killed four birds.
15. They looted the house yesterday.
16. She abused me.
17. The doctor examined the patients.
18. We cut the tree.
19. He was helping me.
20. They were cutting trees.
21. She was singing a song.
22. Ravi was teaching her.
23. They were watching the match.
24. She was writing a letter.
25. The girl was drawing the picture.
26. My son was cleaning the car.

27. They were doing nothing.
28. We were playing the match.
29. Nobody was answering the question.
30. You were watching the match.
31. They were repairing the bridge.
32. I had warned you.
33. They had done the work.
34. She had taught the student.
35. You had informed the police.
36. He had sold his horses.
37. Somebody had stolen.
38. Nobody had done anything.
39. The children had eaten the cakes.
40. Someone had already told him.
41. The robbers robbed him.
42. You made several mistakes.
43. We were expecting good news.
44. They were doing the work carefully.
45. I had informed him of the accident.
46. The people expected him to arrive at nine.
47. The crowd welcomed the leader with great cheer.
48. The fire damaged the building.
49. Shakespeare wrote 'As you like it.'
50. They admired him for his courage.

Solved Examples

1. Active: I saw him opening the box.
Passive: He was seen opening the box.
2. Active: They found him guilty of murder.
Passive: He was found guilty of murder.
3. Active: He invited me to his house yesterday.
Passive: I was invited to his house yesterday.
4. Active: He ordered the police to pursue the thief.
Passive: The police was ordered to pursue the thief.
5. Active: We drove him out of the house.
Passive: He was driven out of the house.
6. Active: Gandhiji taught us the lesson of non-violence.
Passive: We were taught the lesson of non-violence by Gandhiji.
7. Active: I asked him to come in time.
Passive: He was asked by me to come in time.
8. Active: They elected him their leader.
Passive: He was elected their leader.
9. Active: We refused them admission.
Passive: They were refused admission by us.
10. Active: I sent him to market.
Passive: He was sent to market by me.
11. Active: The Indians won the match.
Passive: The match was won by the Indians.
12. Active: Somebody had slashed the picture with a knife.
Passive: The picture had been slashed with a knife.
13. Active: Most people opposed this.
Passive: This was opposed by most people.

14. Active: The lawyer gave her the details of her father's will.

Passive: She was given the details of her father's will.

15. Active: The farmer saved the snake's life.

Passive: The snake's life was saved by the farmer.

16. Active: He hurt himself.

Passive: he was hurt by himself.

FLUENT SPOKEN ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Exercise

Turn the following into the passive voice.

1. The police arrested some thieves last night.
2. They had warned us not to kill wild animals.
3. They held a reception in his honour.
4. Most of our men opposed this.
5. They posted all the letters yesterday.
6. They asked me to leave the place.
7. He expected me to offer him the chair.
8. He wrote the letter carefully.
9. Someone left this bag in the class.
10. They had arranged everything properly for the meeting.
11. They were cutting the trees for their personal use.
12. The crowd expected him to come in time.
13. We finished the work in about two weeks.
14. Tigers attacked the travelers.
15. Robbers looted the travelers.
16. The same boy abused me that day.
17. The fire destroyed many houses.
18. A boy of ten saved my life.
19. The fire burnt my house to ashes.
20. Somebody told him the news this morning.
21. We all love and respect Mahatma Gandhi.
22. One does not like a man who tells lies for nothing.
23. I had already told him about the accident.
24. The police kept the thieves in custody.
25. We clean the rooms regularly.

9. Simple Future Tense

[Passive form: shall / will + be + V³]

Active

I shall help you.

She will teach me.

He will do it.

Ali will type it.

People will forget it.

Passive

You will be helped by me.

I shall be taught by her.

It will be done by him.

It will be typed by Ali.

It will be forgotten.

10. Future Continuous Tense

[Passive form: shall /will + be + being + V³]

Active

I shall be doing this.

They will be helping us.

Passive

This will be being done.

We shall be being helped.

Note: Future Continuous Tense के passive form का प्रयोग uncommon है। फिर भी अगर करना हो, तो ऊपर बताए गए तरीके से करें।

11. Future Perfect Tense

[Passive form: shall / will + have been + V³]

Active

I shall have written the book.

They will have informed us.

Passive

The book will have been written by me.

We shall have been informed.

12. Future Perfect Continuous Tense

[Passive form: shall / will + have been being + V³]

Active

We shall have been building the fort for five years.

Passive

The fort will have been being built for five years.

Note: Future Perfect Continuous Tense के passive voice का प्रयोग uncommon है। अगर करना पड़े, तो ऊपर बताए गए तरीके से करें।

13 . Modal Verbs: Passive Form

shall, will, can, could, may, might, should, would, must, ought इत्यादि modal auxiliaries हैं। जब इनके बाद active verb रहता है तब प्रयुक्त verb को passive में बदलने के लिए निम्लिखित का प्रयोग करते हैं –

modal auxiliary + be + V³

Active

They will kill the bird.

I can lift it.

They could solve the problem.

He may defeat you.

You must help your brother.

One should keep one's promises.

We should help the poor.

None can challenge him.

Passive

The bird will be killed.

It can be lifted by me.

The problem could be solved.

You may be defeated by him.

Your brother must be helped.

Promises should be kept.

The poor should be helped.

He cannot be challenged.

13 . Modal Verbs: Passive Form

यदि Verb Phrase का रूप Active Voice में modal auxiliary + have + V3 हो, तो Passive Voice में इसका form होगा -

modal auxiliary + have been + V³

Active

You should have helped her.

I could have beaten her.

You must have done that.

Passive

She should have been helped.

She could have been beaten by me.

That must have been done by you.

Exercise

Turn the following into the passive. 'by + agent' should be mentioned only when it is necessary

1. I shall help you.
2. You will teach her.
3. They will forget it.
4. The police will arrest the thief.

5. I shall do it.
6. We shall welcome him.
7. People will remember him.
8. We shall hear his voice no more.
9. Nobody will pay the match.
10. We shall discuss the matter tomorrow.
11. Somebody will beat you one day.
12. We shall buy the books tomorrow.
13. You can do it.
14. everyone can break it.
15. One can solve it.
16. A child cannot lift it.
17. he could beat him.
18. I could help you.
19. You may win the race.
20. he might solve it.
21. They may defeat us.
22. Our team may win the match.
23. you must help the poor.
24. You must not pluck flowers.
25. You must send a reply.
26. You should help her.
27. you should take exercise.
28. They should finish the work.
29. I should do it.
30. We should not cheat our friends.
31. We could find it.
32. She could buy a car.

33. He would do it.
34. I would help you.
35. I shall have done the work.
36. They will have bought a car.
37. They will have discussed the matter.
38. They will have built the road by March.
39. The child must have eaten the sweets.
40. They must have killed the bird.
41. he could have done that.
42. You should have helped her.
43. He ought to have respected his elders.
44. He should not have neglected his wife.
45. The little child could not have done all this damage.
46. He might have seen a tiger.
47. he should have written a letter.
48. One can gain nothing without effort.
49. I shall never forget those happy days.
50. one ought to keep one's promises.
51. Students should follow the rules of grammar.
52. My friends will blame me.
53. The boy will do something remarkable.

Solved Examples

1. Active: I shall cast my vote in his favour.
Passive: My vote will be cast in his favour.
2. Active: They will start the show in two months.
Passive: The show will be started in two months.
3. Active: No one will do anything against you.
Passive: Nothing will be done against you
4. Active: We will not admit candidates under twenty.
Passive: Candidates under twenty will not be admitted.
5. Active: We can buy gold but we cannot buy sympathy.
Passive: gold can be bought but sympathy cannot be bought.
6. Active: One may gain success by constant effort.
Passive: Success may be gained by constant effort.
7. Active: you mustn't miss the first opportunity you meet.
Passive: The first opportunity you meet mustn't be missed.
8. Active: You can rely on what he says.
Passive: What he says can be relied on by you.
9. Active: They must endure what they cannot cure.
Passive: What cannot be cured must be endured.
10. Active: You might have heard the name of Gandhiji.
Passive: The name of Gandhiji might have been heard by you.

Exercise

Turn the following sentences into the passive voice. No agent will be required in most of the passive sentences.

1. People will forget this event in a few years' time.
2. We shall discuss the matter tomorrow.
3. Somebody will help you in the hour of need.
4. Someone will lead us properly.

5. We can invest a lot of money in this scheme.
6. In accordance with the rules of the company the organizers should give me two months to defend myself.
7. Even the poor can enrich the country.
8. students should help one another.
9. They could prove it easily.
10. The teacher might punish him for his absence.
11. One would never suspect it.
12. He will have finished the work by the end of this month.
13. The government will have made schemes for unemployed graduates by the end of this year.
14. They should have endured what they could not cure.
15. Nobody would have known anything if you had not said.
16. The poor fellow could have gathered much wealth if he had been a little dishonest.
17. They may have known the fact.
18. Our enemies must have started this rumour.
19. Somebody must have found the lost baby by now.
20. We should do what we want others to do.
21. Even the most foolish man of the world can understand this.
22. A man who has money should help the man who has no money.
23. Examinees must show their admit cards in the examination hall.
24. The policeman shot the criminal with a revolver.
25. You might have hurt his feelings.

Active

I am to do it.

I was to do it.

I had to do it.

Passive

It is to be done by me.

It was to be done by me.

It had to be done by me.

There + verb + noun + infinitive.

[Passive form: There + verb + noun + to be + V³]

Active

There is no time to lose.

There was a lot of work to do.

There is no money to waste.

There is nothing to weep for.

Passive

There is no time to be lost.

There was a lot of work to be done.

There is no money to be wasted.

There is nothing to be wept for.

It + verb + noun + infinitive + object.

Active

It is time to take exercise.

It is now time to start the race.

It is time to say our prayers.

Passive

It is time for exercise to be taken.

It is now time for the race to be started.

It is time for our prayers to be said.

EXERCISE

Turn the following into the passive voice-

1. They are to play the match today.
2. My father is to buy a car.
3. She is to teach me.
4. They are to sell their houses.
5. Someone is to help those orphans.
6. He was to buy my books.
7. I was to help those poor boys.
8. They were to paint the house.
9. I have to do this work.
10. They have to confess their guilt.
11. I have to blame no one.
12. She is to guide me.
13. We have to serve our country.
14. The Principal has to distribute prizes among the winners.

Imperative Sentences Expressing Order/Command

Active

Do this work.
Bring a glass of water.
Open the door.
Switch on the radio.
Don't pluck the flowers.
Inform the police of the accident.
Don't touch this wire.
Give the order.

Passive

Let this work be done.
Let a glass of water be brought.
Let the door be opened.
Let the radio be switched on.
Let the flowers not be plucked.
Let the police be informed of the accident.
Let this wire not be touched.
Let the order be given.

Imperative Sentences Expressing Advice

Subject + should + be + V³

Active

Love your country.
Help the poor.
Help your neighbours.
Don't be daunted by danger.
Don't insult the poor.

Passive

Your country should be loved.
The poor should be helped.
The poor should be helped.
You should not be daunted by danger.
The poor should not be insulted.

Active

Let him complete the work.
Let us discuss the matter.
Let us work together.
Let us dance.

Passive

Let the work be completed by him.
Let the matter be discussed.
It is suggested that we should work together.
It is suggested that we should dance.

Active

Kindly post the letter.
Take your chair, please.
Please sit down.
Please come in.

Passive

You are requested to post the letter.
You are requested to take your chair.
You are requested to sit down.
You are requested to come in.

Passive of Indirect Command/Request/Advice

Active

He asked Mohan to help him.

I requested her to sing a song.

The doctor advised me to take medicine in time.

They told me to be quick.

Somebody told me to wait outside.

He ordered the police to pursue the thief.

Passive

Mohan was asked to help him.

She was requested to sing a song.

I was advised to take medicine in time.

I was told to be quick.

I was told to wait outside.

The police was ordered to pursue the thief.

EXERCISE

Put the following sentences into the passive voice-

1. Do this at once.
2. Open the door.
3. Inform the police.
4. Switch off the light.
5. Inform him of the accident.
6. Post the letters.
7. Don't close the gate.
8. Never cheat your friends.
9. Don't touch the wire.
10. Read this book.
11. Help your friends.
12. Don't cheat anybody.
13. Take medicine in time.
14. Give him a warning.
15. Give him a chance to mend himself.
16. Help the poor.
17. Send for the doctor.
18. Help the poor students.
19. Bring a glass of water.
20. Feed the poor.

EXERCISE

Change the following into the passive voice-

1. He ordered Mohan to go out.
2. He asked me to sing a song.
3. He requested me to help him.
4. I advised him to take medicine in time.
5. The doctor suggested me to take exercise everyday.
6. Tell him to leave the place.
7. I want you to buy this book.
8. It is time to take tea.
9. I request you to lend me your car.
10. Farmers use oxen to plough the field.
11. I told him to stop behaving like a child.
12. I asked him to come in time.
13. Someone seems to have made a terrible mistake.
14. They shouldn't have beaten the innocent boys.
15. You are to start a school to teach the blind.
16. He wants everyone to respect him.
17. I had to follow him.
18. He wants someone to help him.
19. Deposit the money in the bank.
20. Be hopeful in your life.
21. People mustn't forget him.
22. Someone has spilt ink on the book.
23. They will finish the work in two months.
24. The teacher ordered the student to stand up.
25. It is time to accept the challenge.
26. The teacher always tells us to be punctual.
27. Let him inform the police.
28. Hear him now.
29. Inform the police.
30. we have to say a little in this matter.
31. What is the time to close the shop?
32. They needn't examine the patients.

Subject + Verb + Noun + Infinitive

Active

I saw Ravi play.
I found him swim.
I made him weep.
They made me laugh.
They made me sing.
We saw the plane take off.

Passive

Ravi was seen to play by me.
He was found to swim by me.
He was made to weep by me.
I was made to laugh.
I was made to sing.
The plane was seen to take off.

Subject + Verb + Object + Complement

Active

We made him chairman.
They elected Mukesh captain.
They made him king.
I found him guilty of murder.
We did not crown him king.

Passive

He was made chairman.
Mukesh was elected captain.
He was made king.
He was found guilty of murder.
He was not crowned king.

FLUENT SPOKEN ENGLISH GRAMMAR

EXERCISE

Turn the following into the passive voice-

1. I saw Ravi play.
2. They made us laugh.
3. He made us work.
4. We found the boy guilty.
5. They called him a fool.
6. We elected him our leader.
7. The people will make him chairman.
8. People consider him dry honest.
9. We made Ravi our captain.
10. They elected him their leader.

Active

He looks after me.
They will look after you well.
All his friends laugh at him.
We must listen to our elders.
A car ran over my cat.
Mothers bring up children.
They objected to his proposal.
We must write to him.
The thief broke into the house.
We threw him out.
We must look into the matter.

Passive

I am looked after by him.
You will be well looked after.
He is laughed at by all his friends.
Our elders must be listened to.
My cat was run over.
Children are brought up by mothers.
His proposal was objected to.
He must be written to.
The house was broken into.
He was thrown out.
The matter must be looked into.

Active

I know it.
He satisfied me.
The result surprised me.
His behaviour shocked me.
He pleased me.
The book has interested me
very much.

Passive

It is known to me.
I was satisfied with him.
I was surprised at the result.
I was shocked at his behaviour.
I was pleased with him.
I have been very much interested in this book.

WORKED OUT EXAMPLES

Using infinitive forms change the following sentences into the passive voice-

1. They say that he is a spy.
He is said to be a spy.
2. They said that he was a spy.
He was said to be a spy.
3. They say that he was a spy.
He is said to have been a spy.
4. People believe that he has much wealth.
He is believed to have much wealth.

16. They know that she has done it.
She is known to have done it.
17. They knew that the girl had acted.
The girl is known to have acted.
18. They believe that she has been cheated.
She is believed to have been cheated.
19. People believed that the explosion had been caused by a bomb.
The explosion was believed to have been caused by a bomb.
20. They know that we have been trying for years.
We are known to have been trying for years.
21. People believed that the leader had been serving the country for years.
The leader was believed to have been serving the country for years.
22. They expect that the work will have been completed by the next year.
The work is expected to have been completed by the next year.
23. They proved that the work they were doing was illegal.
The work they were doing was proved to be illegal.
24. They believe that she was alone there.
She is believed to have been alone there.
25. They claim that the boys who are accused of the crime have not been arrested.
The boys who are accused of the crime are claimed to have not been arrested.
26. We expect that she will buy a car next year.
She is expected to buy a car next year.
27. We think that the boy had the legs broken in the accident.
The boy is thought to have had the legs broken in the accident.

EXERCISE

Transform the following sentences into the passive voice in two ways-

1. They say that he is a thief.
2. They said that he was a thief.
3. they say that he was thief.
4. They believe that he knows the fact.
5. They believed that he knew the fact.
6. They believe that he knew the fact.
7. They know that I have a lot of problems.
8. They knew that I had a lot of problems.
9. They know that I had a lot of problems.
10. People believe that he is living abroad.
11. People believed that he was living abroad.
12. People believe that he was living abroad.
13. They feel that they are doing nothing.
14. They felt that they were doing nothing.
15. They feel that they were doing nothing.
16. They believe that she has honesty.
17. we feel that she had honestly.
18. we felt that she had honesty.
19. They believe that he has killed the bird.
20. They believed that he had killed the bird.
21. They believe that he had killed the bird.
22. they know that he has been trying for years.
23. They say that he had been trying for years.
24. They said that she had been living there.
25. They believe that the fact is well known.
26. They say that the fact was well known.
27. They claimed that the fact was well known.
28. They think that she has been misled.
29. They thought that she had been misled.
30. People believed that the earth was flat.
31. Everyone thinks that the government had strength.
32. They say that he knows both English and Latin.

Passive of Negative & Interrogative Sentences

Negative Sentences

Active

They do not help him.

I cannot beat him.

Nobody has stole the pen.

Don't insult the poor.

She beats no one.

Don't pluck the flowers.

Don't go there.

Passive

He is not helped.

He cannot be beaten by me.

The pen has not been stolen.

The poor should not be insulted.

No one is beaten by her.

Let the flowers not be plucked.

You are ordered not to go there.

Interrogative Sentences

Active

Does he help you?

Do you teach her?

Does he write you a letter?

Do they love you?

Do people believe it?

Did he complete the work?

Did he inform the police?

Did I not buy the book?

Does he not know you?

Do they laugh at you?

Does she not clean the room?

Passive

Are you helped by him?

Is she taught by you?

Are you written a letter by him?

Are you loved?

Am I loved by him?

Was the work competed?

Were the police informed?

Was the book not bought by me?

Are you not known to him?

Are you laughed at?

Is the room not cleaned by her?

FLUENT SPOKEN ENGLISH GRAMMAR [A]

Is he doing the work?
 Is he helping you?
 Are they playing the game?
 Am I making noises?
 Has he broken the glass?
 Has anyone stolen his pen?
 Have they defeated you?
 Were you doing the work?
 Were you watching the match?
 Were they not cutting trees?
 Has he not cheated us?
 Had he not warned you?
 Had somebody stolen his pen?
 Shall we buy a car?
 Will you help me?
 Will she not do it?
 Will nobody help you?
 Shall we have done this?
 Should we help her?
 Can you lift it?
 Will everyone blame us?
 Could he kill the bird?
 Would he do it?
 Have you to buy a car?
 Has she to paint the house?
 Had I to teach her?
 Is he to write a letter?
 Was she to post the letter?
 Are they to play the match?
 Were they to invite you?

[B]

Is the work being done by him?
 Are you being helped by him?
 Is the game being played?
 Are noises being made by me?
 Has the glass been broken by him?
 Has his pen been stolen?
 Have you been defeated?
 Was the work being done by you?
 Was the match being watched by you?
 Were trees not being cut?
 Have we not been cheated?
 Had you not been warned by him?
 Had his pen been stolen?
 Will a car be bought by us?
 Shall I be helped by you?
 Will it not be done by her?
 Will you not be helped?
 Will this have been done by us?
 Should she be helped by us?
 Can it be lifted by you?
 Shall we be blamed by everyone?
 Could the bird be killed by him?
 Would it be done by him?
 Has a car to be bought by you?
 Has the house to be painted by her?
 Had she to be taught by me?
 Is a letter to be written by him?
 Was the letters to be posted by her?
 Is the match to be played?
 Were you to be invited?

[C]

[C]

How did the boys solve the problem?
boys?

When did he beat you?

Why are you doing this?

Why has he stolen the pen?

Why do they cut the trees?

Why was he looking at you?

How had they finished the work before?

How shall I solve it?

Why can you not do this?

How have you to teach the students?
you?

Why had they to kill the bird?

How was the problem solved by the

When were you beaten by him?

Why is this being done by you?

Why has the pen been stolen by him?

Why are the trees cut?

Why were you being looked at by him?

How had the work been finished before?

How will it be solved by me?

Why can this not be done by you?

How have the students to be taught by

Why had the bird to be killed?

[D]

What does he eat?

What are you looking for?

What were you reading?

What will they do?

What can people do for her?

What should they do for her?

What have you to do?

What can they throw away?

What are you to give up?

What has he done?

What work will you do?

How much rice do we export every year?

How many students will they award?

What is eaten by him?

What is being looked for by you?

What was being read by you?

What will be done?

What can be done for her?

What should be done for her?

What has to be done by you?

What can be thrown away?

What is to be given up by you?

What has been done by him?

What has been done by you?

How much rice is exported every year?

How many students will be awarded?

[E]

Who did this?
Who wrote the Ramayana?
Who will not do this?
Who has stolen this pen?

Who can defeat him?

Who has to buy a car?

Which boy beat you?

Who helps you?

Who are you helped by?

Whom do you like most?

Whom will you beat?

By whom was this done?
By whom was the Ramayana written?
By whom will this not be done?
By whom has his pen been stolen?
Who has his pen been stolen by?
By whom can he be defeated?
Who can he be defeated by?
By whom has a car to be bought?
Who has a car to be bought by?
By which boy were you beaten?
Which boy were you beaten by?
By whom are you helped?

Who is liked most by you?

Who will be beaten by you?

EXERCISE

Transform the following sentences into the passive voice-

1. Do Ram and Shyam do this work?
2. Does she laugh at you?
3. do people grow rice in Bihar?
4. Do I not help you?
5. Does she not often cheat you?
6. Did he buy a car?
7. Did he beat the boys?
8. Did you not solve the problem?
9. Did he not paint the box?
10. are you cleaning the room?
11. am I not helping them?
12. Was he writing a letter?
13. Was nobody listening to you?
14. Has he finished the work?
15. Had they won the match?

EXERCISE 68

Transform these sentences into the passive voice-

1. What do you eat?
2. What are you reading?
3. what have they done?
4. What did he break?
5. What was he eating?
6. What will they bring?
7. What can people do?
8. What have you to find out?
9. What are you to teach?
10. What work can you do?
11. How many students do you teach?
12. How many cups have they broken?
13. How much milk can you drink?
14. How many books have you to write?
15. How many times have they insulted you?
16. who wrote this poem?
17. Who has done this?
18. Who beats you?
19. who can tell me a story?
20. Who will win the prize?
21. Who is solving this?
22. Who had insulted you?
23. Who has to bring the newspaper?
24. Who is to sing a song?
25. Who killed the cobra?
26. Whom do you love?
27. Which boy broke the glass?
28. Which girl cheated you?
29. Does the jug contain milk?
30. Do you laugh at her?
31. Why do my habits worry you?
32. Did they call him a fool?

From Passive to Active

Active

I am helped by Ravi.
A letter is being written by him.
It has been done.
The thief was arrested.
Milk is used for making butter.
The matter has been discussed.
The box was being painted by him.
My pocket has been picked.
He was being examined.
She will be helped by me.
She will be selected.
The fort can be conquered.
She can be beaten by us.
The poor should be helped.
One's promise should be kept.
The speaker was heard patiently.
He was appointed monitor.
Let the post be advertised.
He is known to me.
What is being looked for by you?
Who was this poem written by?
This has to be done.
He is to be helped.
Is he taught by you?
Was he helped?
Were they abused by her?
Can it be done?
Why has she been killed?
What is to be done?

Passive

Ravi helps me.
He is writing a letter.
They have done it.
The police arrested the thief.
People use milk for making butter.
We have discussed the matter.
He was painting the box.
Someone has picked my pocket.
The doctor was examining him.
I shall help her.
They will select her.
The army can conquer the fort.
We can beat her.
We should help the poor.
One should keep one's promise.
The audience heard the speaker patiently.
The teacher appointed him monitor.
Advertise the post.
I know him.
What are you looking for?
Who wrote this poem?
They have to do this.
We are to help him.
Do you teach him?
Did they help him?
Did she abuse them?
Can one do it?
Why have they killed her?
What are they to do?

EXERCISE

Change the following into the active voice-

1. My mother is helped by me.
2. Rice is grown in Bihar.
3. He is always beaten in the class.
4. Nothing is being done.
5. No work has been done.
6. The thief has been arrested.
7. My pen has been stolen.
8. Something is being looked for.
9. He was arrested yesterday.
10. The bird was killed.
11. The cat may be played with.
12. She will be awarded.
13. This can be done.
14. Let this work be done.
15. Let the bird be shot dead.
16. Poor boys should be helped.
17. The country should be loved.
18. Is it said so?
19. Are you taught everyday?
20. Were you beaten by him?
21. Was she arrested?
22. Were you being taught by him?
23. Can it be done?
24. Should they be helped?
25. Why are they beaten?
26. When is it used?
27. How have you been cheated?
28. Where were the thieves arrested?
29. When will he be examined?
30. Why have they to be taught by you?
31. What is to be done by you?
32. What is being looked for by you?

Direct & Indirect Speech

Direct Speech - यदि किसी वक्ता के कथन को उसी के शब्दों में दोहराया जाए, तो वह Direct Speech कहलाएगा। Direct Speech को Inverted Commas के बीच में रखा जाता है।

Direct speech is when the words are given in exactly the way that the speaker said them. So in other words they are quoted with no change.

Indirect Speech - यदि किसी वक्ता के कथन को उसी के शब्दों में न दोहरा कर उसके आशय या सारांश को अपने शब्दों में व्यक्त किया जाए, तो वह Indirect Speech कहलाएगा। Indirect Speech को Inverted Commas के भीतर नहीं रखा जाता है। Indirect speech is also known as reported speech. You may also see it referred to as indirect discourse or indirect narration.

Direct Speech	Indirect Speech
1. उसने कहा, "मैं तैयार हूँ।" He said, "I am ready."	उसने कहा कि मैं तैयार हूँ। He said that he was ready.
2. राम ने मुझसे कहा, "तुम मेरे दोस्त हो।" Ram said to me, "You are my friend."	राम ने मुझसे कहा कि तुम मेरे दोस्त हो। Ram told me that I was his friend.
3. उसने मुझसे पूछा, "क्या तुम बीमार हो?" He asked me, "Are you ill?"	उसने मुझसे पूछा कि क्या तुम बीमार हो। He asked me that I was his friend.

इन उदाहरणों से यह स्पष्ट है कि हिंदी में Speech परिवर्तन के नियम एकदम सरल हैं। Indirect Speech में Inverted Commas के बदले 'कि' का प्रयोग किया जाता है। सर्वनाम, काल (Tense) तथा वाक्य (Sentences) की बनावट (Structure) को बदलने की आवश्यकता नहीं पड़ती है। परंतु इंग्लिश (English) भाषा में ऐसी बात नहीं है। Speech परिवर्तन के बाद वाक्य में बहुत भिन्नता आ जाती है। अतः Indirect Speech वाले वाक्य का अनुवाद करते समय काफी सावधानी (Precaution) बरतने की जरूरत पड़ती है।

पहले हम हिंदी के ऐसे वाक्यों के अनुवाद पर विचार करें जो Direct Speech में हैं और जिनका अनुवाद भी Direct Speech में करना है।

ऐसा करना एकदम आसान है क्योंकि अनुवाद हू-व-हू (Same) किया जाता है, जैसा कि इन उदाहरणों से स्पष्ट है -

Note:

say/said के बाद to का प्रयोग होगा यदि इसके बाद कोई Object आए। जैसे - 1) He said to me. 2) He says to me.

3) I say to him.

परंतु tell/told/ask/asked के बाद to का प्रयोग नहीं होगा। जैसे -

1) He told me. 2) She tells me.

3) I shall tell them. 4) Ram asked me.

Direct Speech को Indirect Speech में बदलन के लिए कुछ General और Special Rules हैं। General Rules उन नियमों को कहते हैं जो प्रत्येक प्रकार के वाक्य के साथ लागू होते हैं।

General Rules को हम तीन भागों में इस प्रकार बाँट सकते हैं -

1. Change of Person
2. Change of Tense
3. Change of Other Parts of Speech

Change of Person

Direct Speech को Indirect Speech में बदलन के लिए Reported Speech में

प्रयुक्त Pronouns को इस प्रकार परिवर्तित (Change) करते हैं -

1. First Person - Reporting Verb के Subject के अनुसार

२. एण्डर्ह झेदह िर्ज्दूहु व्रि के Object के अनुसार

3. Third Person - No Change

इसके लिए इस सूत्र को ध्यान में रखें -

1	2	3
S	O	N

1 का अर्थ है First Person	S का अर्थ है Subject
2 का अर्थ है Second Person	O का अर्थ है Object
3 का अर्थ है Third Person	N का अर्थ है No Change
First Person	Subject के अनुसार
Second Person	Object के अनुसार
Third Person	No Change

Note :

1. यदि Reporting Verb Present या Future Tense में रहता है, तो Indirect Speech में कही भी Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है।
2. यदि Inverted Commas के भीतर Assertive Sentences रहता है, तो Indirect Speech में Inverted Commas के बदले that का प्रयोग होता है।
3. यदि Reporting Verb say/says/said रहे और उसके बाद Object रहे, तो आप यहाँ Indirect Speech में tell/tells/told में बदल दें।

Examples (उदाहरण) :

वह कहता है कि मैं तैयार हूँ।

He says, "I am ready."

He says that he is ready.

यहाँ के बदले that का प्रयोग हुआ है। पुनः I (First Person) को Subject (He) के अनुसार बदल दिया गया है, क्योंकि First Person Subject के अनुसार बदलता है।

Change of Tense

1. यदि Reporting Verb Present या Future Tense में रहता है, तो Indirect Speech में कही भी Tense में कोई परिवर्तन नहीं होता है। अभी तक दिए गए उदाहरणों से यह पूर्णतः स्पष्ट है।
2. यदि Reporting Verb Past Tense में रहता है तो Inverted Commas के भीतर प्रयुक्त Tense में परिवर्तन होता है। यह परिवर्तन इस प्रकार होता है -

Simple Present	Simple Past
Present Continuous	Past Continuous
Present Perfect	Past Perfect
Present Perfect Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous

Simple Present	Past Perfect
Past Continuous	Past Perfect Continuous
Past Perfect	No change of Tense
Past Perfect Continuous	No change of Tense

shall/will	should/would
can	could
may	might
am/is/are	was/were
have/has	had
was/were	had been
had	had had/had
could/should/would/might	generally does not change

Examples (उदाहरण) :

1. उसने कहा कि मैं तैयार हूँ।

He said, "I am ready."

He said that he was ready.

यहाँ Pronoun के साथ-साथ Verb में भी परिवर्तन हुआ है

क्योंकि Reporting Verb 'said' Past Tense में है।

2. उसने कहा कि मुझे कलम नहीं है।

He said, "I have no pen."

He said that he had no pen.

3. सीता ने कहा कि मैंने उसे देखा है।

Sita said, "I have seen him."

Sita said that she had seen him.

4. राम ने मुझसे कहा कि मैं तुमसे प्यार करता हूँ।

Ram said to me, "I love you."

Ram told me that he loved me.

Exercise

Change the following into indirect speech-

1. He says, 'I am reading my book.'
2. She says, 'I am reading my book.'

3. You say, 'I am reading my book.'
4. They say, 'We are reading our books.'
5. Raj says to me, 'I help you.'
6. I say to Raj, 'I help you.'
7. Raj says to Lata, 'I help you.'
8. Lata says to Raj, 'I help you.'
9. They say to us, 'We help you.'
10. He says to me, 'I am your friend.'
11. She says to them, 'I am your friend.'
12. I say to her, 'I am your friend.'
13. Mohan says to Geeta, 'I am your friend and you are my friend.'
14. The boys say to me, 'We have no time for you.'
15. I say to them, 'I have love for you.'
16. Raj says to Meena, 'I help you because you help me.'
17. They say to her, 'We wanted to help you.'
18. She says to the boys, 'You can't defeat me.'
19. She will tell me, 'I am ready to help you.'
20. She will tell the girls, 'I have always supported you.'
21. he has said to them, 'I don't care for you.'
22. They say to me, 'You must obey us.'
23. I say to them, 'You must obey me.'
24. Ganesh says to Reena, 'I need your pen.'
25. Reena says to Ganesh, 'I need your pen.'

Change of Other Parts of Speech

जब Reporting Verb Past Tense में रहता है, तब Reported Speech में जितने भी निकटतासूचक शब्द रहते हैं, वे सब-के-सब Indirect Speech में दूरी सूचक शब्दों में बदल जाते हैं। जैसे

Direct

This

These

Here

Hence

Now

Thus

Today

Yesterday

The day before yesterday

Tomorrow

The day after tomorrow

Next week/year, etc

Last week/year, etc

A year ago

Indirect

that

those

there

thence

then

so

that day

the day before/the previous day

two days before

the next day/the following day

in two days' time

the following week/year, etc

the previous week/year, etc

a year before/the previous year

Solved Examples

1. She said, 'I am glad to be here this evening.'
She said that she was glad to be there that evening.
2. He said, 'I am now speaking to this boy.'
He said that he was then speaking to that boy.
3. He said, 'I will do it tomorrow.'
He said that he would do it the next day.
4. She said, 'I am starting the day after tomorrow.'
She said that she was starting in two days' time.
5. 'I saw him the day before yesterday,' she said.
She said that she had seen him two days before.
6. He said, 'she died a year ago.'
He said that she had died a year before.

Note: चूँकि घटना Past time से संबंधित रहती है इसलिए निकटतासूचक शब्दों को दूरीसूचक शब्दों में बदलना पड़ता है। यदि Reported Speech में प्रयुक्त वस्तु/ परिस्थिति वक्ता के साथ अभी भी मौजूद हो, तो उस हालत में निकटतासूचक शब्दों को दूरीसूचक शब्दों में नहीं बदला जाएगा। जैसे—

1. He said, "This is my table."

अगर यहाँ टेबुल Reporter के सामने बोलने के समय भी मौजूद हो, तो Indirect Speech में this को that में नहीं बदला जाएगा। अर्थात् He said that this was his table.

2. This morning Ram said to me, "I shall give you money today. This morning Ram told me that he would give me money today यहाँ this morning से यह स्पष्ट है कि दिन नहीं बदला है। अतः today का था day नहीं होगा।

Exercise

Change the following into indirect speech-

1. He said, 'I want to stay here this morning.'
2. She said, 'These flowers are very beautiful.'
3. They said to her, 'we shall see you tomorrow.'
4. He said, 'I am going away tomorrow.'
5. She said to me, 'I can't give you money today.'
6. The boy said to his mother, 'I shall not go to school today.'
7. He said, 'My mother will come the day after tomorrow.'
8. I said, 'I did it yesterday.'
9. She said, 'I wrote to him the day before yesterday.'
10. The farmer said, 'I bought the hen yesterday and I am going to sell it tomorrow.'
11. She said to me, 'I couldn't meet you last night, because I was so busy.'
12. She said, 'My husband died a year ago.'
13. Sita said to me, 'I tried to do it yesterday but it couldn't be done because you were absent.'
14. she said, 'I shall join the office next week.'
15. I saw a wild animal in the garden yesterday, 'said she.

ध्यान देने योग्य कुछ आवश्यक बातें

A. कभी-कभी Reporting Verb के बाद Object नहीं रहता है और Reported Speech Second Person à pronoun/adjective में बदलने की आवश्यकता पड़ती है। वैसे परिस्थिति में आप अपने मन से कोई उपयुक्त object को चुन लें और उसे Reporting Verb के बाद दे दें। जैसे

1. He said, "I am waiting for you." He told me that he was waiting for me.
or, He told her that he was waiting for her.

2. He said, "I do not wish to see any of you." He told us that he did not wish to see any of us. or, He told them that he did not wish to see any of them.

3. My father said, "You should take care of your health."

My father told me that I should take care of my health.

4. The teacher said, "You should not make a noise in the class."

The teacher told the students/me/him that they/I/he should not. make a noise in the class.

इस प्रकार Object का चयन आपकी इच्छा पर निर्भर करता है। अतः आप जो उपयुक्त समझें, उसका चयन करें। अगर किसी Passage को Indirect Speech में बदलना हो, तो पूरे Passage के भाव को समझते हुए उपयुक्त Object का चयन करें।

B. यदि Inverted Commas के भीतर संबोधन के शब्द के रूप में नाम आए.. तो उस नाम को Reporting Verb का Object बना दें। जैसे

1. He said, "Ram, I want to help you." He told Ram that he wanted to help him."

2. Sita said, "I love you very much, Mohan."

Sita told Mohan that she loved him very much. C. af Terms of address Ladies and gentlemen, My dear friends, Future of the country senfe and, at en Addressing + object + as + term of address देकर वाक्य शुरू करें। जैसे

1. The leader said, "Ladies and gentlemen, if you give me a chance to serve you I shall do my best to please you." Addressing the people as ladies and gentlemen the leader said that if they gave him a chance to serve them, he would do his best to please them.

2. The Prime Minister said to the students, "Future of the country.. you are my hope, and so you will be given perfect care and guidance."

Addressing the students as future of the country the Prime Minister said that they were his hope, and so they would be given perfect care and guidance. D. यदि Inverted Commas के भीतर O, Well, Okay इत्यादि हों, तो इसे Indirect Speech में लोप कर दें। जैसे

He said, "Well, Ram, you can take it." He told Ram that he could take it.

E. Reported Speech वाक्य के शुरू में भी रह सकता है या Reporting Verb के बाद में या Reporting Verb की दोनों तरफ, परंतु Indirect Speech में वही पद पहले आएगा, जो Inverted Commas के बाहर है, जैसा कि आप करते आ रहे हैं। जैसे

1. "I shall go with you as soon as I am ready." replied she. She replied that she would go with me as soon as she was ready.

2. "I have completed my job," he said. He said that he had completed his job.

Exercise

Change the following into indirect speech-

1. He says, 'I am your friend and you are my friend.'
2. Sita will say, 'Everything I have is yours.'
3. She said, 'I wanted to give you my handkerchief.'
4. We shall help you, 'they said to Sita, 'in case nobody comes to help you.'
5. I can never forget you,' said she.
6. Okay, I will come again tomorrow,' he said.
7. The teacher said, 'Mohan, what you do is not good.'
8. He said, 'Well, I shall punish you today.'
9. She said, 'Radha, you will be awarded for the bravery you have shown today.'
10. He said, 'Radha, you are my life.'
11. Many people, 'he said, 'are not happy over the progress of India.
12. The leader said, 'Dear friends, I can't do without your help.

Prepositions

अंग्रेजी शुद्ध-शुद्ध लिखने और बोलने के लिए आप जिन grammatical items का अध्ययन करते हैं, उनमें Preposition का अपना एक विशेष महत्त्व है। इसके प्रयोग करने में बहुत अधिक सावधानी बरतने की आवश्यकता होती है, क्योंकि किसी खास शब्द के साथ किसी खास Preposition का प्रयोग होता है और कुछ शब्दों के साथ भिन्न-भिन्न अर्थों में भिन्न-भिन्न Prepositions का प्रयोग होता है। यह कुँ में गिर गया। यहाँ अगर में' की अंग्रेजी 'in' देते हैं, तो यह गलत होगा। यहाँ आपको 'into' देना होगा क्योंकि गति/वेग दिखाने के लिए 'into' का प्रयोग होता है। अर्थात् He fell into the well. पुनः live के बाद in देते हैं तो इसका कुछ और अर्थ होगा; अगर live के बाद on देते हैं तो इसका कुछ और अर्थ होगा

He lives in India. (यह भारत में रहता है।)

The cow lives on grass. (गाय घास पर जिंदा रहती है।) अब यहाँ देखें कि एक ही word 'died' के बाद विभिन्न स्थितियों में भिन्न-भिन्न Prepositions का प्रयोग कैसे हुआ है

He died of cancer.

He died from wound.

He died for the nation.

He died through neglect. He died in battle.

He died by violence.

इस प्रकार आपको word wise/situation wise यह जानना होगा कि किसी word के बाद कौन Preposition अभीष्ट अर्थ के लिए उपयुक्त होगा। इसके लिए सिर्फ certain rules जानना ही पर्याप्त नहीं होगा। बल्कि इसके लिए आपको निरंतर अभ्यास करना होगा तथा किस word के बाद कौन Preposition लगता है, यह ध्यान में रखना होगा तथा आवश्यकता पड़ने पर dictionary consult करना होगा।

Where to place a preposition in a sentence:

आप जानते हैं कि Preposition वह शब्द है जो प्रायः किसी Noun या Pronoun के पहले आकर उस Noun या Pronoun का संबंध वाक्य के कुछ अन्य शब्दों से कराता है। इसलिए अधिकांश स्थितियों में यह किसी Noun या Pronoun के पहले प्रयुक्त होता है जैसा कि इन वाक्यों से स्पष्ट है

He is in the room.

She is going to school.

I am tired of walking.

The cat jumped off the chair.

यहाँ एक बात ध्यान में रखें कि जिस Noun/Pronoun के पहले Preposition प्रयुक्त रहता है यह Noun/Pronoun अभीष्ट Preposition का Object कहलाता है। ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों में room, school, walking, chair तथा me क्रमशः in to. of off तथा to के Objects हैं।

कुछ परिस्थितियों में Preposition का प्रयोग Sentence / Clause के अंत में होता है या हो सकता है। ऐसी स्थिति में पहले object आता है, उसके बाद कुछ अन्य पद और तब उपयुक्त Preposition. अब एक एक कर उन स्थितियों पर विचार करें।

1. जब Object के रूप में कोई Interrogative Pronoun प्रयुक्त रहता है, तब Preposition को प्रायः Sentence / Clause के अंत में रखा जाता है। जैसे (at is used for what)

What are you looking at?

What are you thinking of? (of is used for what)

What are you so angry about? (about is used for what)

Whom did you give it to? (to is used for whom)

Who is she weeping for? (for is used for who)

ऊपर दिए गए वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त what, when तथा who Interrogative Pronouns हैं जो वाक्य के अंत में प्रयुक्त Prepositions के Objects हैं।

2. जब Object Relative Pronoun 'that' रहता है, तब Preposition को Sentence / Clause के अंत में रखा जाता है। जैसे

Here is the book that you have asked for..

This is the boy that I told you of. I know the house that she lives in.

3. जब किसी वाक्य में Relative Pronoun अव्यक्त (unexpressed) रहता है, तब अभीष्ट Preposition को Sentence / Clause के अंत में रखा जाता है। जैसे

This is the room I slept in.

This is the man I was speaking of.

The man I spoke to is my friend.

The house I live in is my own.

यहाँ ऊपर दिए गए प्रत्येक वाक्य में 1 के पहले Relative Pronoun प्रयुक्त रहना चाहिए, लेकिन यह अव्यक्त है। अतः अभीष्ट Preposition को Sentence / Clause के बाद प्रयुक्त किया गया है। अगर आप Relative Pronoun प्रयुक्त करते हैं, तो वाक्यों को इस प्रकार लिखा जाएगा -

This is the room in which I slept. (This is the room that/where I slept in.)

This is the man of whom I was speaking.

The man to whom I spoke is my friend. The house in which I live is my own.

4. यदि कोई Infinitive Object के रूप में प्रयुक्त रहे, तो Preposition Infinitive के बाद प्रयुक्त होगा। जैसे This is the house to live in.

Here is a football to play with.

I need something to write with.

5. Some miscellaneous sentences ending with prepositions:

She likes being looked at.

I hate being laughed at. Who is it for?

Gandhiji is famous all the world over.

(1) Without – के बिना

I can't do anything without your help – मैं तुम्हारी मदद के बिना कुछ नहीं कर सकता.

We should not travel without ticket – हमें बिना टिकट के यात्रा नहीं करना चाहिए.

(2) With – साथ/से (इसका प्रयोग 'से और साथ' दोनों अर्थ में किया जाता है.)

We are with you – हम तुम्हारे साथ हैं.

Why do you always quarrel with her – तुम उससे हमेशा क्यों झगड़ते हो?

He was shivering with cold – वह ठंड से कांप रहा था.

You should have cut it with a knife – तुम्हें उसे चाकू से काटना चाहिए था.

He was shot with a pistol – उसे पिस्तौल से गोली मारी गयी.

(3) Via – होते हुए/से होकर

This train goes to Mumbai via Kanpur – यह ट्रेन कानपुर से होते हुए मुंबई जाती है.

I came to know about you via my brother – मुझे तुम्हारे बारे में मेरे भाई से पता चला.

Corona spreads via physical contact – कोरोना शारीरिक संपर्क से फैलती है.

(4) Upon – इसका प्रयोग गतिशील अवस्था में 'पर/के ऊपर' के अर्थ में होता है. आप इसके स्थान पर स्थिरता को दिखाने के लिए 'on' का प्रयोग कर सकते हैं.

Keep these books upon that table – ये किताबें उस टेबल पर रख दो.

Don't talk to me upon this topic – इस टॉपिक पर मुझसे बात मत करो.

There were some books on the table – टेबल पर कुछ किताबें थीं.

It depends upon you – यह तुम पर निर्भर है.

(5) Up till/up until – तक

Up till / Up until 1918, women in British had no right to vote – 1918 तक ब्रिटेन में महिलाओं को मतदान का अधिकार नहीं था.

(6) Up to – तक

He was very well up to yesterday – वह कल तक बिलकुल ठीक था.

It is up to me to succeed and fail – सफल या असफल होना मेरे हाथ में है.

(7) Up – पर/समाप्त होना

Can you climb up this tree – क्या तुम इस पेड़ पर चढ़ सकते हो?

He ran up the wall – वह दीवार पर चढ़ गया.

What is up – आजकल क्या चल रहा है?

(8) Under – के नीचे

Why are you sitting under the table – तुम टेबल के नीचे क्यों बैठे हो?

We stood under the roof till it stopped raining – बारिश रुकने तक हम छत के नीचे खड़े रहें.

The river is flowing under the bridge – नदी पुल के नीचे से बह रही है.

(9) Towards – की ओर/दिशा में/के प्रति

He leaned towards me and said something – वह मेरी तरफ झुका और कुछ कहा.

We are going ahead towards home – हम घर की दिशा में आगे बढ़ रहे हैं.

They ran towards each other – वे एक दूसरे की ओर दौड़े.

(10) to – को/तरफ/में

He is going to college – वह कॉलेज जा रहा है.

I have to go home – मुझे घर जाना है.

Add two to three – तीन में दो मिलाओ.

Throw the ball to me – गेंद मेरी तरफ फेंको.

Prepositions: Meaning and Correct Usage

(11) Till / Until – तक / तक नहीं

He will wait for me till 5.30 – वह साढ़े पांच बजे तक मेरा इंतजार करेगा.

I can't finish this work until Monday – मैं यह काम सोमवार तक समाप्त नहीं कर सकता.

Stay here until I come – यहीं रुको जबतक मैं आ नहीं जाता.

(12) Throughout – दौरान/भर

The audience were talking throughout his speech – उसके भाषण के दौरान श्रोता पूरे समय बात कर रहे थे.

He couldn't sleep throughout the night – वह रात भर नहीं सो सका.

(13) Through – में/से होकर/

The same thought is running through my mind – मेरे दिमाग में भी वही विचार घूम रहा है.

We went through the forest – हम जंगल में से गये.

They are wet through – वे पूरी तरह से भीग गए हैं.

(14) Than – की अपेक्षा

I would rather go to Mumbai than Delhi – मुझे दिल्ली की अपेक्षा मुंबई जाना ज्यादा अच्छा लगेगा.

The train arrived earlier than usual – रेलगाड़ी हमेशा से जल्दी आ गयी.

I have more experience than you – मेरे पास तुमसे ज्यादा अनुभव है.

(15) Since – 'से/जब से' इसका प्रयोग निश्चित समय के लिए किया जाता है.

I haven't met him since he came from Delhi – मैं उससे नहीं मिला हूँ जब से वह दिल्ली से आया है.

He has been working in the field since morning – वह सुबह से खेत में काम कर रहा है.

I have been waiting for him since 3 O'clock – मैं तीन बजे से उसका इंतजार कर रहा हूँ.

(16) Round – के चारों ओर / पास में

The earth moves round the sun – पृथ्वी सूर्य के चारों ओर घुमती है.

People gathered round the home – लोग घर के चारों ओर जमा हो गये.

Their house has tree all round – उनके घर के चारों ओर पेड़ हैं।

(17) Regarding/concerning – के संबंध में

Do you have any information regarding it – क्या आपके पास इससे संबंधित कोई जानकारी है?

I want to ask you a question concerning your life – मैं तुमसे तुम्हारे जीवन से संबंधित प्रश्न पूछना चाहता हूँ।

(18) Over – पर/के ऊपर

Something was written over the door – दरवाजे पर कुछ लिखा हुआ था।

He put his hands over his eyes – उसने अपने हाथ आँखों पर रख लिये।

There was a fan over my head – मेरे सर के ऊपर एक पंखा था।

(19) Out of – के बाहर / में से

I am out of city this time – मैं इस समय शहर से बाहर हूँ।

He never went out of home – वह गाँव से बाहर कभी नहीं गया।

He got 50 out of 50 – उसे पचास में से पचास अंक मिले।

(20) Opposite – के सामने

He was sitting opposite me – वह मेरे सामने बैठा था।

My home is opposite the post office – मेरा घर डाकखाने के सामने है।

नीचे Preposition in Hindi meaning दिए जा रहे हैं जिन्हें आप अच्छे से समझें और इनका प्रयोग Daily use English speaking sentences में करें।

On / On to – पर : Put this book back on/on to the table.

On – के ऊपर : Excuse me, you are standing on foot.

Off – से (अलगव को दर्शाता है) : Get your hand off me.

Of – का/की/के/से : Who was the first prime minister of India.

Near /Near to – आसपास/के पास : Is there a hotel near here?

Inside – के अंदर / में : What is inside this box.

In / Within – अंदर / के अंदर : I can run one kilometre in ten minutes. 2. He can run one kilometre within ten minutes.

From – से : He came back from Mumbai yesterday.

For – के लिए : They have left for Mumbai.

Except – को छोड़कर : The shop is open every day except Sunday.

During – के दौरान : They lived abroad during the war.

By – से/के द्वारा/तक : I prefer traveling by train. 2. This house was cleaned by me. 3. He will come here by 3 O'clock.

Beyond – के पार/से परे : There is a small town beyond this mountain.

Between – के बीच : This bus runs between Varanasi and Ghaziabad.

Besides – के अतिरिक्त : He reads the newspaper besides book.

Beside – के बगल में : He came and sat beside me.

Beneath – के नीचे : I found this letter beneath the table.

About – के बारे में / लगभग : I know nothing about you.

Above – के ऊपर : They live above us.

Across – के पार – Can you swim across the river?

After – के पीछे : Who was running after you?

Against – के खिलाफ : Everyone was against that decision.

Alongside/Along – के किनारे : A road goes along the river.

Among – के बीच : Distribute this sweet among the children.

At – पर : He dropped me at the station.

Before – के पहले : Think before speaking.

Behind – के पीछे : Who is behind your success?

Below – के नीचे : They live below us.

EXERCISE

Insert appropriate prepositions-

1. The book was the table.
2. you should give smoking.
3. I am proud My son.
4. he was annoyed Me.
5. the teacher was angry Us.
6. he was found guilty theft.
7. I am not satisfied your work.
8. I agree You on that point.
9. you should take care your health.
10. I shall go Patna tomorrow.
11. we shall travel train.
12. he felt pity the poor.
13. He jumped the river.
14. I must consult him.
15. beware The dog.
16. Don't quarrel Anybody.
17. I have been waiting here a long time.
18. some robbers broke My house.
19. he deals stationery.
20. The trader deals rice.
21. this book belongs me.
22. There is no one to look the poor boy.
23. we walked Miles.
24. Divide the money the labourers.
25. he shot the bird a gun.
26. You should not laugh him.
27. I am senior You.
28. he cannot give his habits.
29. Please send A doctor.
30. Sohan deals rice and other grains.
31. she was not pleased her husband.
32. Come and sit me.

EXERCISE

Insert appropriate prepositions-

1. What is The box?
2. The house was Fire.
3. He came Kolkata yesterday.
4. He is The top of his class.
5. He was down fever.
6. He has been accused stealing.
7. I was here time.
8. He has not replied my letter.
9. He comes A noble family.
10. She is good English.
11. I am senior you.
12. I have no faith his promises.
13. What are you looking ?
14. The lady objected The statement.
15. he is suffering fever.
16. The watch was sold five hundred rupees.
17. He is driving the car A fast speed.
18. I congratulated him his success.
19. he was robbed his wealth.
20. The glass fell the ground.
21. That is no news You.
22. he cried the top of his voice.
23. The miscreants set the housefire.
24. he is anxious his safety.
25. I am devoted my country.
26. she is not capablehard work.
27. she is the apple my eye.
28. Don't throw stones The mad man.
29. He has been beaten his father A stick.
30. it will be finished The end of this month.
31. is it an answer the question?
32. he shot the bird.

EXERCISE

Insert appropriate prepositions-

1. Rice sells Rs. 10/- a kilo.
2. Children are play.
3. he preferred death dishonour.
4. he enquired the case.
5. Can you swim The river?
6. Hamlet' was written Shakespeare.
7. He was wandering the town.
8. he prevented me doing this work.
9. May God bless you A son!
10. He fired shot shot.
11. He was accused theft.
12. Congratulations your success.
13. Aim doing your duty.
14. He is sick Fever.
15. The train started time.
16. I go to school bicycle.
17. Don't cry spilt milk.
18. He is married the daughter of a rich man.
19. He came Train.
20. The train is running sixty kilometers an hour.
21. He stood the judge.
22. They are Work.
23. He complained the offender.
24. He is innocent the crime.
25. I came his request.
26. He went to the temple foot.
27. I was waiting the postman.
28. He is suspicion.
29. You should be ashamed Your conduct.
30. There is an injection cholera.
31. The lights were turned cholera.
32. What price is this sold?

EXERCISE

Insert appropriate preposition-

1. He is jealous me.
2. This is a secret You and me.
3. the drug had no effect me.
4. I have been away a week.
5. this is the poet I was referring
6. He is careless His dress.
7. they passed a dense forest.
8. May I pay Cheque?
9. I competed The prize.
10. There are some exceptions the rule.
11. he died the loss of blood.
12. You always worry me foolish questions.
13. I cannot cut it this knife.
14. I met him Chance.
15. I am anxious The result.
16. He is debt.
17. he did not turn Today.
18. He will enquire this matter.
19. he is blind his own faults.
20. I am confident winning.
21. he seized me the neck.
22. I was invited dinner.
23. do you have faith Me?
24. I differ You.
25. I am devoted my love.
26. she has thirst knowledge.
27. He sat His father and mother.
28. wait tomorrow.
29. Did you see the woman white?
30. He was disqualified the post.
31. I am content what I have.
32. He gave me this book free cost.

EXERCISE

Insert appropriate prepositions-

1. He was blind birth.
2. Heat turns water vapour.
3. he threw himself the river.
4. The cow lives grass.
5. I have liking fish.
6. The letter was written Ink.
7. it was kind You.
8. What are you looking?
9. he assisted me doing this.
10. we make curd Milk.
11. her face was red Anger.
12. he will bleed Death.
13. what is that me?
14. I dreamt home last night.
15. Have you got any money you?
16. you should not boast your merits.
17. He stood me.
18. he is Tour.
19. The examination commences the 12th May.
20. he went a walk.
21. he was hard work all the morning.
22. He took his coat.
23. I swear Almighty God.
24. he died the burn injury.
25. you must listen the headmaster all your attention.
26. He was deaf my request.
27. He is The committee.
28. The man fell the ladder.
29. we should aim excellence.
30. He fell the horse.
31. he is desirous going.
32. They were dancing Joy.

EXERCISE

Insert appropriate prepositions-

1. What are you afraid ?
2. This work is his capacity.
3. I am writing a book economics.
4. Early rising is beneficial health.
5. he hanged himself a piece of cloth.
6. the meeting broke at 5 p.m.
7. the house was fire.
8. Gandhiji is remembered all the world.
9. she is expected to reach here 8 o'clock.
10. I abstain drinking.
11. they fell The enemy at once.
12. death does not distinguish rich and poor.
13. We have been waiting here over an hour.
14. I object your sleeping in the day time.
15. He died the loss of blood.
16. He is weak English.
17. I am disgusted my life.
18. I am disgusted The conditions existing in the university.
19. It is easy to translate a dictionary.
20. He was trembling fever.
21. will you entrust me That letter?
22. He succeeded Passing the examination.
23. Everyone said yes him.
24. he threw a stone Me.
25. I can't agree you in this matter.
26. I was brought up Muzaffarpur Bihar.
27. cut the bread small pieces.
28. we must pay attention out health.
29. he takes his father.
30. Oil does not mix water.
31. I could never part this ring.
32. Poverty is not a bar success.

EXERCISE

Insert appropriate prepositions-

1. I am vexed you.
2. he was not attentive studies.
3. The accused was absolved all the blame.
4. he carried several prizes.
5. he assisted me doing this.
6. War between India and Pakistan broke in 1970.
7. he has no interest sports.
8. This paper is inferior That.
9. he was accompanied his mother to the movies.
10. I complained him.
11. this chair is sale.
12. He enquired me.
13. he reminded me our appointment.
14. I rely his help.
15. who did you give the money ?
16. There is a bridge The railway lines.
17. she seems to take pride Her beauty.
18. the mail train is due 3 p.m.
19. He has to beg door to door.
20. I am sick the whole business.
21. nobody you knows the truth.
22. this house is infested Rats.
23. I am obliged You for this good turn.
24. she has no excuse being late.
25. You are right Holding that opinion.
26. My brother has no liking such a thing.
27. are you sure success?
28. he is clever translation.
29. We got difficulties.
30. the dog ran the road.
31. I solved the questions an hour.
32. he died The country.

EXERCISE

Insert appropriate prepositions-

1. He abstains liquor.
2. The dogs differ each other in colour.
3. I differ You.
4. I prefer this book that.
5. He is debt.
6. I called him at his residence.
7. is there a train the platform?
8. People are standing The platform.
9. The enemy submitted himself The king.
10. he excels speaking English.
11. He made objection my proposal.
12. I am fond Music.
13. it is best to draw lines a ruler.
14. I shall do it pleasure.
15. Are you confident success?
16. He is married My cousin.
17. this is different that.
18. Do you agree the proposal?
19. Our efforts were crowned success.
20. I was invited the dinner party.
21. she has great affection him.
22. Lust money is not good.
23. I suffered fever.
24. the river flows the bridge.
25. I am not envious His success.
26. this resembles that.
27. Her dress was made silk.
28. The term begins July 1st.
29. He gave his assent my proposal.
30. Please open the book Page five.
31. The godown is infested rats.
32. Nobody informed me what had happened.

EXERCISE

Insert appropriate prepositions-

1. This is the road to go
2. she gave me a chair to sit
3. He accompanied his friends.
4. this is a matter little importance.
5. The meeting was held secret.
6. We shall start 15th July.
7. She will be cured her fever.
8. We cannot do money.
9. He died loss of blood.
10. He yielded superior force.
11. This is not meant you.
12. She is related Me.
13. We approached The house.
14. The sun rose the horizon.
15. He went away business.
16. our class consists Thirty boys.
17. Only graduates are eligible The post.
18. He died over work.
19. I bought this hat ten shillings.
20. We must guard ourselves vices.
21. I shall explain this Them.
22. He is seeking real happiness.
23. The lady was dressed black.
24. they soon got the fire control.
25. He was ill Sunday to Friday.
26. He is not popular his students.
27. You may write a pen.
28. The letter was written ink.
29. He differs you.
30. I shall inform them this.
31. She is the apple my eye.
32. Everyone longs peace.

EXERCISE

Insert appropriate prepositions-

1. He is angry my behaviour.
2. He is angry me.
3. Send this letter my address.
4. The enemy had to give
5. He took revenge me.
6. He meditates his past life.
7. He has not met me Friday.
8. The dog attacked The child.
9. They were all sitting The child.
10. He resigned himself failure.
11. We all congratulate you your success.
12. This ox is not accustomed the yoke.
13. I heard it The radio.
14. He was addicted gambling.
15. What are you interested ?
16. He is very weak English but good mathematics.
17. Have you been invited their wedding?
18. You will have to answer Me Your misconducts.
19. He was amused the joke.
20. Did you see the girl blue eyes?
21. What brought the quarrel?
22. He hankers riches.
23. all her faults he liked her.
24. The ship was laden salt.
25. I wish to remind you the promise you made.
26. He has no control his servants.
27. The library is open the public.
28. which class are you?
29. He sat the shade of a tree.
30. I could not answer The question.
31. I fear Him.
32. There is no harm doing this.

EXERCISE

Insert appropriate prepositions-

1. Write ink.
2. Write a pen.
3. we have duty our parents.
4. Sit The door.
5. when this was searched It was found.
6. Let us prepare our examination.
7. The thief robbed me The phone.
8. He spoke to me the house.
9. You are welcome my house.
10. he is taller than you four inches.
11. You should attend your lessons.
12. He is an enemy you.
13. He is coming plane.
14. Alcohol is injurious health.
15. The tank abounds Fish.
16. Don't prevent me working.
17. Abstain speaking ill of others.
18. He repented having been idle.
19. The moon does not shine its own light.
20. He is an heir a large property.
21. This line is parallel that line.
22. He is blind his own flaws.
23. He is blind an eye.
24. What is he now?
25. You must confirm The regulations.
26. Do you bet horse races?
27. He rides a car.
28. He rides A cycle.
29. There is no cause anxiety.
30. Hard work is key success.
31. He has been absent Monday This week.
32. He fell prey disease.

EXERCISE

Insert appropriate prepositions-

1. I am sick the whole business.
2. He availed himself the chance.
3. He spoke Me English.
4. There is a saying the Hindus.
5. This is a question you must decide yourself.
6. He is complaining headache.
7. She was waiting me the station.
8. Life is compared a battle field.
9. I insisted having my fee paid.
10. He prohibited me borrowing a books.
11. I begged him a favour.
12. The Principal is away holiday.
13. The whole village got difficulties.
14. Nepal is the north of Bihar.
15. This is the book I told you
16. The poet has compared her face the moon.
17. a drowning man will catch a straw.
18. He is weak his head.
19. He is false heart.
20. is the train running time?
21. They discussed the matter.
22. I can certify His good character.
23. He always failed want of help.
24. He supplies the poor clothing.
25. Do not deviate the path of virtue.
26. Where is the bus coming?
27. The old lady is affectionate all.
28. We shall talk the question the employers tomorrow.
29. Will you entrust me that letter?
30. No, I will entrust nothing you.
31. I have resigned my post.
32. The hotel is adjacent the station.

EXERCISE 110

Insert appropriate prepositions-

1. I was horrified the sight So much distress.
2. He did not die Cholera but The effects over exposure the sun.
3. This shopkeeper deals grain, but he did not deal honestly me and I shall have no more dealings Him in future.
4. you will have to answer me your misconduct.
5. I must consult you that matter shortly.
6. We must provide our children a rainy day.
7. Do not live riches, but whatever you live live honest labour, and if you to live A small income, live your means.
8. The river Which I went My brother abounds fish.
9. We took a boat and rowed The stream the opposite bank.
10. Write ink and put your name The top of the page.
11. Whatever you decide stick it and do your best difficulties.
12. I am vexed Him what he has done.
13. I disapprove Your way of working, and must, therefore, dispense Your services.
14. I can divide this apple Two persons, but it is too small to be divided forty; for it cannot be divided Forty parts.
15. He was disqualified the post on account age, but he was not disqualified Competing for a diploma.
16. I will exchange this book you another.
17. While the cat was running The mouse, the mouse ran Its hole and freed itself Danger.
18. He increased wisdom the increase of age.
19. A young man should be his guard..... bad company, and beware Falling into their evil ways.
20. She burst Tears, when she found that he did not care her affection.
21. I cannot agree You this matter, and therefore, I do not agree Your proposal.

Phrasal Verb

1. Verb, Verb Phrase और Phrasal Verb की बनावट पर विचार करें-

(a) Verb: Verb एक word का बना होता है, जैसे go, come, laugh. read, went, gone, goes, going, am, is, are, shall, will, etc.

(b) Verb Phrase: Verb Phrase दो या दो से अधिक Verbs से बना होता है जिसमें एक Main Verb होता है और अन्य Helping Verbs, जैसे is going, have eaten, has been taught, shall be reading, can be done, etc. Verb Phrase au Tense, Voice 37 Mood से होता है।

© Phrasal Verb: Phrasal Verb दो या तीन words से बना होता है। दो words वाला Phrasal Verb, Verb और Adverbial Particle या Verb और Preposition के combination से बना होता है। तीन words Phrasal Verb,

Verb + Adverbial Particle + Preposition combination से बना होता है, जैसे- Verb Adverbial Particle Combination: get out, workout, run out, sit down, turn down, write down, switch off, see off, come in, set in, get out, find out, go on, keep on, give away, etc.

Verb + Preposition Combination: eat into, believe in, belong to, consist of, live on, count on, send for, stand for, take after, etc.

Verb + Adverbial Particle + Preposition Combination: put up with, carry on with, go on with, run out of, come up against, look forward to, etc. इस प्रकार हम संक्षेप में Phrasal Verb को Verb Adverb/ Preposition Combination Verb-Adverb-Preposition Combination कह सकते हैं।

2. अधिकांश Phrasal Verbs, Verb + Adverbial Particle से बने होते हैं। इसलिए आपके लिए यह जानना आवश्यक है कि Adverbial Particle क्या (a) कुछ words ऐसे हैं जिनका प्रयोग कभी Preposition के रूप में होता है, तो कभी Adverb के रूप में, जैसे in, down, up by. ऐसे words. Adverbial Particles कहलाते हैं। ये हैं-

above, about, across, along, around, round, before, behind, by, down, forward, in, near, off, on, out, over, past, through, under, up, etc.

(b) कुछ Adverbs ऐसे हैं जो Verb के साथ जुड़कर Phrasal Verbs बनाते हैं लेकिन ये Adverbs किसी भी वाक्य में Preposition के रूप में प्रयुक्त नहीं होते। ऐसे Adverbs जैसे back, away भी Adverbial Particles कहलाते हैं।

Note: कुछ words जैसे from during सिर्फ Preposition के रूप में प्रयुक्त होते हैं। Adverb के रूप में कभी नहीं ऐसे Prepositions Adverbial Particles नहीं कहलाते हैं।

3. Phrasal Verb का Meaning: Phrasal verb में प्रयुक्त शब्दों का अलग-अलग अर्थ नहीं होता। शब्द समूह का सामूहिक रूप से अपना खास अर्थ होता है। यह खास अर्थ एक या एक से अधिक हो सकता है। जैसे— look after give up see off —देखभाल करना —छोड़ना, त्यागना -विदा करना go through -पूरा करना, सहना परीक्षा करना: उड़ा देना Meaning के दृष्टिकोण से Phrasal Verbs को तीन भागों में बाँटा जा सकता है-

(a) पहले भाग में हम वैसे Phrasal Verbs को रखेंगे जिनका अपना खास अर्थ तो होता ही है लेकिन यह खास अर्थ इनमें प्रयुक्त शब्दों के अलग-अलग अर्थ से एकदम भिन्न नहीं हो

(b) दूसरे भाग में हम वैसे Phrasal Verbs को रखेंगे जिनका पहला भाग जो Verb होता है वह अपना अर्थ नहीं खोता है जबकि दूसरा भाग मात्र intensifier का काम करता है, जैसे wipe away, hurry up yell out. wash up, etc. हालांकि ऐसे Phrasal Verbs का भी अपना खास अर्थ होता है। जैसे—come in, care for cut down, switch off, etc.

(c) तीसरे भाग में हम वैसे Phrasal Verbs को रखेंगे जिनका अर्थ उनके अपने component parts के अर्थ से बिल्कुल भिन्न होता है, जैसे look after (देखभाल करना) give up (छोड़ना, त्यागना), put up with (बर्दाश्त करना)। ऐसे Phrasal Verbs के meaning को आसानी से guess नहीं किया जा सकता। Meaning पहले से ज्ञात नहीं होने पर dictionary देखना आवश्यक हो जाता है।

4. Transitive and Intransitive Phrasal Verbs: Phrasal Verbs transitive या intransitive होते हैं। जैसे-

look after (tr) — The old man looked after the baby. look out (intr) — Look out! There is a lorry coming. blow out (tr) -The wind blew out the candle. come in (intr) -He asked me to come in.

कुछ Phrasal Verbs के एक से अधिक अर्थ होते हैं। और यह संभव है कि एक या कुछ अर्थों में ये transitive हों और अन्य में intransitive, जैसे— take off (1) tr-He took off his hat. take off (35) intr-The plane took off at 9 o'clock.

5. Separable and Non-separable Phrasal Verbs: Transitive Phrasal Verbs & type is a 8-Separable and Non-separable. Separable Phrasal Verbs ये हैं जिनके component parts को पृथक किया जा सकता है और उनके बीच कोई object घुसाया जा सकता है। Non-separable Phrasal Verbs & component parts 257 किया जा सकता है। जैसे- पृथक नहीं

Separable Phrasal Verbs:

- (a) He took off his coat.or. He took his coat off.
- (b) He picked up his pen from the floor. or. He picked his pen up from the floor.
- (c) The wind blew out the candle.or, The wind blew the candle out.

Non-separable Phrasal Verbs:

- (a) The old man looked after the baby.(not, the old man looked the baby after.)
- (b) The cow lives on grass. (not, the cow lives grass on.)

Note: ऊपर आपने देखा कि Separable Phrasal Verbs के object या तो Main Verb के बाद आते हैं या Phrasal Verbs के अंत में दोनों positions में से कोई भी position ले सकते हैं। लेकिन अगर Separable Phrasal Verbs & object at Pronoun (me/you/him/her/us/it/ them) हो, तो अभीष्ट Pronoun, Main Verb के बाद आएगा, Phrasal Verbs के Particles के बाद नहीं, जैसे- The wind blew it out. (not, the wind blew out it.) He took it off. (not, he took off it.)

I must pay him back. (not, I must pay back him.)

6. Phrasal Verbs and Idioms: Phrasal Verbs Idioms & सभी Idioms Phrasal Verbs नहीं हैं। Phrasal Verbs के parts सिर्फ, Verb, Adverbial Particle और Preposition हो सकते हैं, component जबकि Idioms के component parts कोई भी Part of Speech हो सकते *afe get rid of, live and let live, make up one's mind expressions को Idioms कहेंगे Phrasal Verbs नहीं।

7. किसी वाक्य में प्रयुक्त कोई combination Phrasal verb हो सकता है और यही combination दूसरे वाक्य में Phrasal Verb नहीं भी हो सकता है। इसे समझने के लिए इन वाक्यों में प्रयुक्त शब्द समूह 'go through' पर विचार करें-

(a) Go through this gate, and you will see the house on your left. इस वाक्य में प्रयुक्त शब्द समूह go through Phrasal Verb नहीं है। वाक्य में go और through का अलग-अलग शाब्दिक अर्थ है।

(b) I have to go through the accounts to see where the mistake is. इस वाक्य में go through का प्रयोग Phrasal Verb के रूप में हुआ है। यहाँ go का अर्थ 'जाना' और through का अर्थ से होकर या 'के पार नहीं है'। go through का सामूहिक रूप से खास अर्थ है- examine carefully.

अब हम कुछ Phrasal Verbs पर विचार करेंगे। यहाँ आपको यह जानना जरूरी नहीं है कि Verb के बाद Preposition प्रयुक्त हुआ है या Adverb: आपको सिर्फ Phrasal Verbs के अर्थ और इनके प्रयोग को समझना है।

1. account for to explain the cause of, का कारण बताना His illness accounts for his absence.

2. ask for (something) to demand की माँग करना के लिए अनुरोध करना
The workers asked for more pay and shorter hours.

3. ask for (somebody)-to say that one wants to see or speak to somebody, मिलने या बात करने के लिए संवाद देना Go to the office and ask for my secretary.

4. back out – to withdraw from an agreement or a promise. मुकर जाना You promised me to help, now you can't back out.

5. back up to support का समर्थन करना I shall back up my friend's claim.

6. bear out to support somebody to confirm something. सही ठहराना, साबित करना Have you a witness to bear out what you say? They will bear me out in court.

7. bear with-to tolerate patiently, धीरज से सहना, बरदाश्त करना You must bear with her a few days more.

8. blow out to extinguish by blowing. फूँककर बुझाना When the door opened, the wind blew out the candle,

9. blow up to explode, फूट पड़ना, उड़ा देना Suddenly the bomb blew up. They blew up the building/bridge/car. The commander ordered the army to blow up the bridge.

10. boil over-to boil and flow over the side of a container, The milk is boiling over now.

11. break down-to fail, to stop, to cease to function, a हो जाना The car suddenly broke down while passing through the forest. The telephone has broken down. He broke down in the middle of his speech.

12. break in (intransitive), break into (transitive)-to enter by force. बलपूर्वक (तोड़कर) भीतर घुस जाना Some thieves broke in and stole all the costly articles. The house was broken into last week when the owner was on holiday.

13. break out (of bad or violent events) to start suddenly, अशुभ घटना का आरंभ होना The fire broke out at midnight. The war broke out in 1940. Cholera has broken out everywhere in the district.

14. break up to end, to disperse, अलग होना The meeting broke up at 9

14. break up to end, to disperse, arren, farer Faure et on The meeting broke up at 9 o'clock.
15. break with to end a relationship with somebody, as farकरनाHe broke with his girlfriend.
16. bring forth-to produce something, ell Trees bring forth fruit. Drinking brings forth misery.
17. bring up-to raise, to rear or educate, re-quran, My parents died when I was a little child and I was brought up by my father's friend. She brought up the orphan as her own child.
18. bring out to cause something to appear or open, to publish. प्रकट या प्रकाशित करना We are soon bringing out a political magazine
19. bring down-to cause to fall, to lower, fr, H No government has been able to bring down the prices of commodities.
20. bring about-to cause something to happen. His theory brought about a revolution in the field of computers.
21. bring under-to bring something under control. नियंत्रण में करना The police soon brought the riot under.
22. bring round- -to cause somebody to regain consciousness, लाना The injection soon brought the patient round.
23. burn down-to destroy or to be destroyed by fire The mob burnt down the railway station.
24. call in—किसी को उसकी सेवा लेने के लिए बुलवाना Please call in a doctor immediately.
25. call off-to cancel, to withdraw, to order to stop. वापस लेना The strike will be called off tomorrow. The match was called off because of bad weather.
26. call up-to recall, re After the accident he was not able to call up past events.
27. call for to require, to demand, to need, Hasen, stepen sten the situation calls for prompt action to be taken. The teacher called for an explanation of my absence.
28. call on/upon-to formally invite or ask somebody to speak, etc. I now call upon the chairman to address the meeting.
29. call out-ger, to summon when the situation was out of control, the army was called out.
30. care for-to like or love somebody or something, to look after, पसंद करना, चाहना, देख-भाल करना He does not care for his wife. She cares for her deeply.

डर कर पीछे हटना - **Back away**

I backed away from the dog in the way.

(मैं रास्ते में कुत्ते से डर कर पीछे हट गया)

किसी चीज की मांग या जरूरत होना - **Call for**

The work calls for endurance and patience.

(काम को धीरज और धैर्य की जरूरत होती है)

रुकना या रुकने का आदेश देना - **Call off**

We were studying in the class while teacher came and called us off.

(हम सब पढ़ रहे थे कि आया और हमें रुकने का आदेश दिया)

किसी वजह से लोगों को बाहर रखना - **crowd out**

The restaurant's regular customers are being crowded out by tourist.

(टूरिस्ट की वजह से रेस्टोरेंट के नियमित ग्राहकों बाहर रखा जा रहा है)

किसी चीज की मांग करना - **Cry out for**

Indian youths are crying out for free and fair elections.

(भारतीय युवा सवलत और साफ चुनाव की मांग कर रहे हैं)

अलग जगहों से किसी चीज का चुनाव करना - **Cull from**

This news has been culled from different newspapers.

(यह समाचार अलग-अलग से अखबारों से लिया गया है)

किसी चीज को हल्के झटके से हटाना - **Dab off**

I dabbed the dirt off from my shirt.

(मैंने हल्के झटके से अपने शर्ट से धूल हटाया)

थोड़ी मात्रा में लगाना - **Dab on or onto**

He dabbed oil on his hair.

(उसने बाल में थोड़ा सा तेल लगाया)

कुछ बांटना - **Deal out**

The profits will be dealt out among the investors tomorrow.

(कल इन्वेस्टर में लाभ बंटेगा)

चाल कम करना - **Ease down**

There is a narrow street ahead, so we should ease down.

(आगे तंग गली है, हमें स्पीड कम कर लेनी चाहिए)

एक तरफ हटना या किसी को जगह देना - **Ease up**

Please ease up a little, as there are several people without seats.

(कृपया थोड़ा एक तरफ हटिए, चूंकि कुछ लोग बिना सीट के हैं)

विपरीत दिशा में देखना - **Face away**

She faced away in order to hide her blushes.

(उसने अपनी शर्म को छिपाने के लिए विपरीत दिशा में देखा)

पूरी तरह से गोल घुमना - **Face about**

He told me to face about.

(उसने पूरी तरह से गोल घुमकर मुझे बताया)

धीरे-धीरे अदृश्य होना - **Fade out**

The picture on the TV screen faded out.

(TV screen पर पिक्चर धीरे-धीरे अदृश्य हो गया)

बहुत थका देने वाला काम करना - **Fag away**

I am fagging away in the office.

(मैं ऑफिस में थकावट भरा काम कर रहा हूँ)

बहुत थका देना - **Fag out**

This work will fag you out.

(यह काम तुम्हे थका देगा)

खुशी और आनंद के एक जगह से दूसरी जगह जाना - **Gad about/around**

While they gad around the world, their children are neglected.

(जब वे खुशी और आनंद के लिए दुनिया में घुमते हैं तो उनके बच्चे नज़र अंदाज किये जाते हैं)

किसी के बहुत करीब आना - **Gain on**

We will have to run faster - they are gaining on us.

(हमें तेज भागना पड़ेगा - वे हमारे बहुत करीब आ रहे हैं)

बहुत तेजी से तरक्की करना - **Gallop ahead**

We are galloping ahead in the race to develop new technology.

(हम नयी तकनीक अविष्कार की दौड़ में बहुत तेजी से तरक्की कर रहे हैं)

जुवा खेलकर कुछ खो देना - **Gamble away**

Don't gamble away all your money.

(अपना पैसा मत गंवाओ)

घुमना या दिशा बदलना - **Put about**

The ship put about and headed for safety.

(जहाज दूसरी दिशा में घुमा और सुरक्षा के साथ आगे बढ़ा)

की अपेक्षा अधिक महत्वपूर्ण मानना - **Put above**

We should put the welfare of the men who work the machines.

(हमें बाकी चीजों की अपेक्षा उन लोगों के कल्याण को ज्यादा महत्व देना चाहिए जो मशीनों पर काम करते हैं)

किसी चीज को एक तरफ रखना - **Put a side**

She put the newspaper aside, and we had a long talk.

(उसने न्यूज़पेपर एक तरफ रखा, और हमने एक लम्बी बातचीत शुरू की)

अनुमान लगाना - **Put at**

I would put your age at about twenty.

(मैंने अनुमान लगाया कि तुम्हारी उम्र बीस साल है)

द्वारा किसी चीज को रखना - **Put back**

Please put this book back on the shelf when you have finished with it.

(जब तुम इस किताब को पढ़ लेना तो कृपया इसे द्वारा शेल्फ में रख देना)

भविष्य में इस्तेमाल करने के लिए पैसा बचाना - **Put by**

I have put by a big amount for the rainy day.

(मैं मुसीबत के दिन के लिए बहुत पैसा बचा चुका हूँ)

किसी चीज पर कठिन मेहनत करना - **Hammer away at**

He hammered away at a very difficult problem till he got a solution.

(उसने इस गंभीर समस्या पर समाधान मिलने तक कड़ी मेहनत किया)

Exercise For Phrasal Verbs For Beginners With Hindi Meanings -

किसी चीज को कमजोर बनाना - **Dampen down**

Nothing should be done to dampen down his ardent enthusiasm.

(उसके उत्साह को कमजोर करने के लिए ऐसा कुछ नहीं किया जाना चाहिए)

किसी चीज को सफल करने में फेल हो जाना - **Fall down on**

You should not fall down on your promise.

(तुम्हें अपने वादे पर फेल नहीं होना चाहिए)

किसी का ढह जाना - **Fall in**

The roof of my house fell in yesterday.

(कल मेरे घर की छत ढह गयी)

अनुपस्थिति के बाद ज्वाइन करना - **Fall in with**

They crossed into China and fell in with their forces in India.

(उन्होंने चाइना को पार किया और वे इंडिया में अपने सैनिकों में शामिल हो गये)

अलग-अलग भागों में बटना - **Fall into**

The lecture series falls naturally into four parts.

(लेक्चर सीरीज को प्राकृतिक रूप से चार भागों में बाटा जाता है)

किसी अवसर का होना या पड़ना - **Fall on**

What day does Diwali fall on?

(दिवाली किस दिन को पड़ता है?)

मुखर् बनना या होना - **Fart about/around**

Stop farting about and behave yourself.

(मुखर् बनना बंद करो और ठीक से रहो)

असफल हो जाना या बेकार हो जाना - **Fall through**

Our holiday plans fell through because of money.

(पैसे के कारण हमारी छुट्टी बेकार हो गयी)

किसी का देख-भाल करना - **Look after**

We should look after our family in all conditions.

(हमें हर स्थित में अपने परिवार का देख-भाल करना चाहिए)

भविष्य में क्या होने वाला है के बारे में सोचना - **Look ahead**

चारों तरफ घुमकर पता लगाना - **Look around/round**

I looked around the crowded hall, hopping to find an empty seat.

(मैंने खाली सीट ढूँढने की आशा में भीड़ वाले हाल में घुमकर पता लगाया)

कोई चीज़ जल्दी से पढ़ना या देखना - **Look through**

My teacher looked through my notes before the examination.

(मेरे अध्यापक ने परिक्षा से पहले मेरे नोट्स को जल्दी से पढ़ा)

अधिक अच्छा होना - **Look up**

Business is looking up day by day.

(बिजिनेस दिन-प्रतिदिन और अधिक अच्छा हो रहा है)

Phrasal Verbs Of Call With Examples From Hindi to English -

किसी को देखने जाना - **Call on**

She called on me yesterday for about an hour.

(वह कल मुझे लगभग एक घंटे के लिए देखने आयी)

अभिवादन करना या विनती करना - **Call out**

If you want anything from the this shop, just call out to me.

(यदि आपको इस दुकान से कुछ चाहिए, तो मुझसे अभिवादन करो)

फोन करके बुलाना - **Call up**

I shall call you up if I need your help.

(यदि मुझे तुम्हारी मदद की आवश्यकता होती है तो मैं तुम्हें बुला लूंगा)

किसी को जोर से डांटना - **Call down**

They really called me down for doing that.

(उन्होंने ने मुझे उसको करने के लिए वास्तव में जोर से डांटा)

किसी व्यक्ति या वस्तु को नापसंद करना शुरु करना - **Take against**

Why have you suddenly taken against me.

(तुम अचानक मुझे नापसंद क्यों करने लगे)

खेल में किसी को आसानी से हरा देना - **Take a part**

We were simply taken apart by the opposition.

(हम **opposition** से आसानी से हार गये)

किसी **sensation** या **feeling** के कारण को दूर करना - **Take away**

The doctor has given him a few tablets to take away the pain.

(डॉक्टर ने दर्द के कारण को दूर करने के लिए कुछ दवाईयां दी)

किसी को कोर्ट में उपस्थित करना - **Take before**

She was hauled up for speeding and taken before the court.

(उसे तेजी से खींचते हुए लाया गया और कोर्ट के सामने पेश किया गया)

वापस लेना या स्वीकार करने के लिए सहमत होना - **Take back**

We only take goods back if customers can produce the receipt.

(हम सामान वापस तभी लेते हैं जब ग्राहक receipt दिखाते हैं)

Phrasal Verbs Of Get With Examples From Hindi to English -

बिमारी के बाद के बाद चलने फिरने में समर्थ होना - **Get about**

He is getting about again after his illness.

(वह अपनी बिमारी के बाद एक बार फिर चलने फिरने लायक हो रहा है)

अपराध साबित होने के बाद किसी को पकड़ने की कोशिश करना - **Get after**

It is for the police to get after the villains as fast as possible.

(जितना जल्दी हो सके पुलिस को गद्दारों को पकड़ने की कोशिश करना है)

अच्छी तरह से तरक्की करना - **Get ahead/ahead of**

By doing just a little extra homework each day, she soon got well ahead of her classmates.

(हर दिन थोड़ा और होमवर्क करके, वह बहुत जल्दी अपने क्लासमेट में अच्छी तरह से सफल हो गयी)

छुट्टी का होना - **Get away**

We have no chance of getting away this summer.

(हमारे पास इस गर्मी में छुट्टी लेने का मौका नहीं है)

घर वापस लौटना - **Get back**

What time did you get back last night.

(पीछली रात को तुम घर वापस कब आये)

सौभाग्य से मिलना - **Bang into**

I banged into him after many a year.

(मैं बरसों बाद सौभाग्य से उससे मिला)

किसी से मिलना या बात करना - **Call about**

मांग करना - Call forth

His speech called forth an angry response from the audience.

बिना किसी गंभीरता के किसी चीज में भाग लेना - Dabble in/at

She dabbled in what she called fine art.

किसी के साथ बिजनेस करना - Deal with

As we have dealt with the same firm for years.

बुरी तरह से किसी चीज की आवश्यकता होना या किसी चीज को चाहना - Die for

I was dying for a break away from my family and household commitments.

छोड़ने के लिए दबाव डालना - Drive out/out of

The intruders (घुसपैठ) were driven out of the house at pistol point.

घर पर खाना - Eat in

Write in Your Mother Tongue
FLUENT SPOKEN ENGLISH GRAMMAR



SpeakNowEnglish.Com

"Never Forget in Life"

"Learn Wherever you are"

Online English Speaking

WORKSHOP
MANUAL BOOK FOR

Audio & Video
Spoken English

**30 दिनों में इन्सटेंट
फ्लूएंट इंगलिश
बोलना सीखें !**

Practical,
Creative
&
Meditational
Grammar

Modal Verb
and
Uses

Sentence of
Greetings
(बोलचाल के
अभिवादन वाक्य)

Dictionary of
2000+
Word
Meaning

Letter &
Application
Writing

Curriculum Vitae
(C.V) or Resume
Preparation

Interview
Preparation

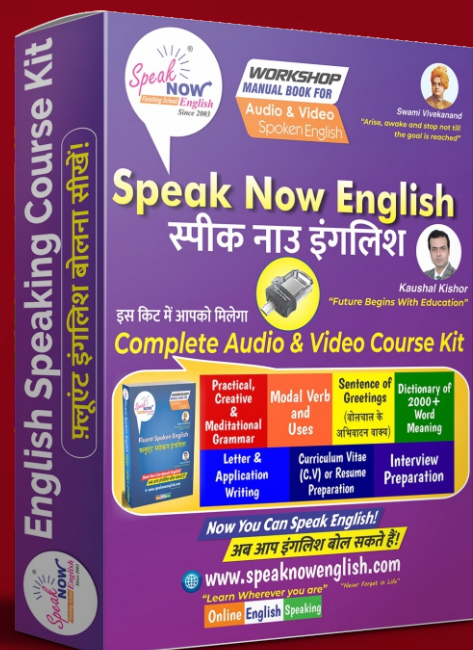
Complete Solution of English Language

Speaking - बोलना

Listening - सुनना

Reading - पढ़ना

Writing - लिखना



About Author

Hi! I am Kaushal Kishor English Speaking Coach. I am training through creative, practical & meditational methods that you will never forget in life. It is one of the effective methods which will lead you to success. I know exactly what kinds of training it takes to make you Fluent in the English language. You will be surprised it is nothing to do with your previous experience, worksheet, homework, textbook, memorizing Vocabulary, Remembering Grammar, and Translating. I have created and invented "**SpeakNowEnglish.Com**", which really helped thousands of people around the world to learn real English Speaking Fluently. Dear friends life is too short and don't waste time and money on unrealistic ways of learning. If you agree with your learning start transforming your English Speaking today with one of the finest and most tuned English Speaking coach. Language Can't be remember it can be created & speak according to time and situation.

नमस्ते ! मैं कौशल किशोर इंगलिश स्पीकिंग कोच हूँ। चूंकि भाषा को याद नहीं किया जा सकता है, इसे समय और स्थिति के अनुसार बनाया और बोला जाता है। मैं रचनात्मक, व्यावहारिक और ध्यान विधियों के माध्यम से प्रशिक्षण देता हूँ, जिसे आप जीवन में कभी नहीं भूलेंगे। यह प्रभावी तरीकों में से एक है जो आपको सफलता की ओर ले जाएगा। मुझे पता है कि आपको अंग्रेजी भाषा में फ्लूएंट धाराप्रवाह बनाने के लिए किस प्रकार के प्रशिक्षण की आवश्यकता होती है। आपको आश्चर्य होगा कि इसका आपके पिछले अनुभवों, गृहकार्य, पाठ्यपुस्तक, शब्दावली को याद करने, व्याकरण और अनुवाद को याद करने से कोई लेना-देना नहीं है। मैंने एक यूनिक विधि का निर्माण और आविष्कार किया है जिसके द्वारा वास्तव में दुनिया भर के हजारों लोगों को फ्लूएंट धाराप्रवाह इंगलिश बोलने में मदद की है। प्रिय मित्रों जीवन बहुत छोटा है और सीखने के अवास्तविक तरीकों पर समय बर्बाद न करें। यदि आप अपने इंगलिश बोलना सीखने से सहमत हैं, तो आज ही एक बेहतरीन और सबसे ट्यून किए गए इंगलिश स्पीकिंग कोच के साथ आप अपनी इंगलिश स्पीकिंग को बोलना शुरू करें।

Yours Sincerely,

Kaushal Kishor

English Speaking Coach

Master in Education - University of Mumbai

Post Graduate MBA - NMIMS - Mumbai

Bachelor in Education & Psychology- University of Mumbai

Double Graduate in English - University of Mumbai

Author | Corporate Trainer | Life Coach | Career Coach | Train The Trainer

NLP | UGC-NET | UOM-PET | Mathematics & Engineering Mathematics

20+ Years of Experience

ISBN : 978-81-954235-0-7



+91-93201 888 99 / 93207 555 66
E Mail:- sneavb@gmail.com

₹450.00